A VIEW OF SOCIETY IN EUROPE, IN ITS PROGRESS FROM RUDENESS TO REFINEMENT;
OR, INQUIRIES CONCERNING THE HISTORY OF LAW, GOVERNMENT, AND MANNERS.
BY GILBERT STUART, Doctor of Laws, and Member of the Society of Antiquaries at Edinburgh.
A NEW EDITION.

Quae pristis memorata Catonibus atque Cethésis,
Nune situs informis præset, & deferta vetustas. Hor.

BASIL:
Printed and sold by J. J. TOURNEISEN.
M D C C X C V I I .
ADVERTISEMENT.

It is usual to treat law, manners, and government, as if they had no connexion with history, or with each other. Law and manners are commonly understood to be nothing more than collections of ordinances and matters of fact; and government is too often a foundation for mere speculation and metaphysical refinements. Yet law is only a science, when observed in its spirit and history; government cannot be comprehended but by attending to the minute steps of its rise and progression; and the systems of manners, which characterize man in all the periods of society which pass from rudeness to civility, cannot be displayed without the discrimination of these different situations. It is in the records of history, in the scene of real life, not in the conceits and the abstractions of fancy and philosophy, that human nature is to be studied.

But, while it is in the historical manner that laws, customs, and government, are to be inquired into, it is obvious, that their dependance and connexion are close and intimate. They all tend to the same point, and to the illustration
of one another. It is from the consideration of them all, and in their union, that we are to explain the complicated forms of civil society, and the wisdom and accident which mingle in human affairs.

After this method, I have endeavoured to investigate my subject. The topics I canvass in the following sheets, are various, and constitute a difficult and important branch of my undertaking. If I am so fortunate as to obtain the sanction of the public approbation, I shall proceed to fill up the picture I have begun, and consider, in future publications, civil jurisdiction, nobility, constitutional law, and cultivated manners.

The foundations of a work like this I have attempted, must be laws of barbarous ages, ancient records, and charters. These I could not incorporate, with propriety, in my narrative. This instructive, but tasteless erudition, did not accord with the tenor of a portion of my performance, which I wished to address to men of elegance, as well as to the learned. It consisted, however, with the simpler and the colder style of dissertation. My proofs, accordingly, appear by themselves; and, in consequence of this arrangement, I might engage in incidental dif-
cuffions; I might catch many rays of light that faintly glimmer in obscure times; and, I might defend the novelty of my opinions, when I ventured to oppose established tenets, and authors of reputation.

Though I have employed much thought and affiudity to give a value to these papers, yet I communicate them to the public with the greatest diffidence. My materials were buried in the midst of rubbish, were detached, and unequal. I had to dig them up anxiously, and with patience; and, when discovered and collected, it was still more difficult to digest and to fashion them. I had to struggle with the darkness and imperfection of time and of barbarity. And, from the most able historians of our own and foreign nations, who might naturally be expected to be intelligent guides for the paths I have chosen; I could derive no advantage. They generally prefer what is brilliant to what is useful; and they neglect all disquisitions into laws and into manners, that they may describe and embellish the politics of princes, and the fortunes of nations, the splendid qualities of eminent men, and the lustre of heroic action.

Edinburgh, January 3
1778.
CONTENTS

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Germans before they left their Woods.

SECTION I.

The Institution, Government, and Character of the Germanic Tribes.

Page 1

SECTION II.

An Idea of the German Women.

II

SECTION III.

Of Marriage and Modesty.

16

CHAPTER II.

The political Establishments of the Barbarians after they had made Conquests.

SECTION I.

The Barbaric Conquests. The Origin of the Domains of the Prince, and of Allodiality. The Lands of the Fisc. The Foundation of the Feudal Association, the Rise of the Feudal Grant, and Genius of the Feudal System.

22
CONTENTS.

SECTION II.

Of the Property of the Women. The Dowry, the Morgengabe, and the Marriage portion. The Communication to them of the Powers of Succession and Inheritance. The advancement of Manners.

Page 29

SECTION III.


.. 35

SECTION IV.

Arms, Gallantry, and Devotion. The Origin of Knighthood and the Judicial Combat, of Tournaments and Blazonry. The Sources of Chivalry.

41

SECTION V.

The Institution of Chivalry, the Pre-eminence of Women, Politeness, and the Point of Honor.

53
CONTENTS.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Spirit of Fiefs.

SECTION I.

A distinction in the History of the Feudal Association. The Feudal Incidents. Their Advantages in one Situation. Their Disadvantages in another. The Influence of these different Situations on Society and Manners. . . . Page 63

SECTION II.

A Distinction in the History of Arms and Chivalry. The Sovereign is considered as the Fountain of Honor. The Epoch of the Grandeur of Chivalry. The Decline of Fiefs. The Remedy for their Recovery. The Invention of Knight-service. The Knight’s Fee. The Distinction between the Knight of Tenure and the Knight of Honor. Fiefs under Knight-service. . . . . . . . . 74

CHAPTER II.

CONTENTS.

the Norman. A Distinction concerning their Condition in the Anglo-Saxon and the Anglo-Norman times. The repeated Demands for the revival of the Laws of Edward the Confessor. An Explanation of this Difficulty. The Introduction of Knight-service into England. Of the Number of Knight-fees there. . . . . . . Page 82

CHAPTER III.

Of the Military Power of a Feudal Kingdom.

SECTION I.

An Idea of the Feudal Militia. . . . . 97

SECTION II.


CHAPTER IV.

The Fall of Chivalry as a Military Establishment. The Knights of Honor lose their Consideration. Their Numbers and Venality. Wealth becomes a more solid Title to Knighthood than personal Merit. This Dignity is connected with the Possession of a Fee. It ceases to be Honorable, and is made a

CHAPTER V.
The Military Arrangements which prevailed in the Declension of Fiefs and Chivalry. The Introduction of Standing Armies.

SECTION I.
Of Mercenaries. The Evils which result from them. The Rise of Taxations. 111

SECTION II.
The Difference between a Mercenary Soldier and a Feudal Vassal. Sovereigns find Troops by entering into Contracts with their Nobility, and with Captains by Profession. Volunteers make an Offer of their Service. Commissions of Array. The Disadvantages of these Military Schemes. The Idea and Establishment of a Standing Force. France, and other Nations, lose their Liberties. The Opposition to a Standing Force in England. The total Abolition of Fiefs. The consequent Necessity of a Standing Army. The Precautions and Anxiety with which it is introduced. 115

CHAPTER VI.
Of Manners and Refinement. The Dissolute Conduct of the Women amidst the Decline and Oppressions of Fiefs. The general Corruption which invades Society. 126
## CONTENTS

Authorities, Controversy, and Remarks.

### BOOK I.

**CHAPTER I.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chapter II.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BOOK II.**

**Chapter I.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chapter II.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chapter III.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chapter IV.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chapter V.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chapter VI.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS.

APPENDIX.

NUMBER I.

ARTICLE I. Charta Dotis quam Folradas, constituit Helegrinae Sponsae suæ. Page 297

ART. II. A reciprocal Grant. Roger Pit and his Wife grant and release to the Prior of Brommore a Tenement held in Dower; and the Prior grants a yearly Rent for the Life of the Wife. 298

ART. III. A Release of a yearly Rent in Dower. 299

No II.

ART. I. A Feoffment in Frankmarriage of Land, a Capital Mansion, &c. made to a Man with the Daughter of the Feoffer. 300

ART. II. A Feoffment, or Gift of Land in Frankmarriage with the Sister of the Donor. 301

No III.

ART. I. A Grant of Privilege and Protection from King Edward to the Abbey of Bury St. Edmund. 302

ART. II. A Mandate of Protection from King Henry the Second for the Abbey of Battell. Ibid.

ART. III. Fines made to Kings, that they would remit their Resentments and Indignation. 303

ART. IV. Fines for Favor, and Protection. Ibid.

No IV.

An Accord or Truce between the Earl Marshall, and the Earl of Gloucester, and their Men, under Reciprocal Oath. 304

No V.

ART. I. An Injunction not to tourney by Henry III. 305

ART. II. A Prohibition of Tourneaments by Edward III. Ibid.

No VI.

The Order and Manner of creating Knights of the Bath in the Time of Peace, according to the Custom of England. 307
VIEW
OF
SOCIETY IN EUROPE,
in its progress from rudeness to refinement.

BOOK I.
CHAPTER I.
Of the Germans before they left their Woods.

SECTION I.
The Institutions, Government, and Character of the Germanic Tribes.

It is of little moment to inquire into the origin of the ancient Germans. Their manners and government are subjects more interesting, and concerning which there are memorials of great curiosity and importance. The picture of these nations has been drawn by Tacitus; and the affairs of men never
found an observer more accurate and penetrating. In following such a guide, it is impossible not to convey information; and, on this subject, no modern has a title to speculate, who has not paid a most minute attention to his treatise. Antiquity has not given to the kingdoms of Europe a present more valuable.

The leading circumstance in discriminating the manners of barbarous and refined times, is the difference which exists between them in the knowledge and the management of property. The want of commerce, and the ignorance of money, permit the barbarian to exercise a generosity of conduct, which the progress of the arts is to destroy. The Germans conceived not that their descendants were to grow illustrious by acquisitions of land, and that they were to employ the metals as a source of influence. Land was yet more connected with the nation than the individual. The territory possessed by tribes was considered as their property, and cultivated for their use. The produce belonged to the public; and the magistrate, in his distributions of it, paid attention to the virtue and the merits of the receiver (1).

The German, accordingly, being unacquainted with particular professions, and with mercenary pursuits, was animated with high sentiments of pride and greatness. He was guided by affection and appetite; and, though fierce in the field, and terrible to an enemy, was gentle in his domestic capacity, and found a pleasure in acts of beneficence, magnanimity, and friendship.
A state of equality, in the absence of the distinctions of property, characterized the individuals of a German tribe, and was the source of their pride, independence, and courage. Personal qualities were alone the foundation of pre-eminence. The sons of a chief were not distinguished from those of the simple warrior, by any superior advantages of education. They lived among the same cattle, and reposed on the same ground, till the promise of worth, the symptoms of greatness, separated the ingenious from the vulgar, till valor claimed them (2). Ignorant of the arts of peace, they pursued, with keenness, the occupations of war. Where communities, perpetually inflamed with rivalship and animosity, brought their disputes to the decision of battles, and were agitated with revenge and with glory, the opportunities of distinction were frequent. The only profession known to the Germans was that of arms. The ambitious and enterprising courted dangers where they might acquire renown, and display their conduct and their powers. To such a height did the military ardor prevail, that, if a tribe happened at any time to languish in ease, its youthful and impatient heroes fought those nations who were then at war. They disdained to remain in inaction; and could not so easily be persuaded to till the earth, and to wait its returns, as to challenge an enemy, and to hazard their lives. They thought it mean and ignoble to acquire by their labor, what they might purchase with their blood (3).

The animated temperament they displayed in
war, was also apparent in their private concerns. To the chase they addicted themselves with no measure of moderation. And, in parties at dice, they engaged in their soberest and most serious hours, and with such hope or temerity, that they risked their liberty and persons on the last throw. The affection with which they embraced their friends was ardent and generous. To adopt the resentments, as well as the amities of their relations and kindred, was a duty which they held indispensable (4). In hospitality they indulged with the most unbounded freedom. The entertainer, when exhausted, carried his guest to the house of his next neighbour. Invitations were not waited for; nor was it of consequence to be invited. A reception, equally warm and hearty, was, at all times, certain. On these occasions, giving way to the movements of the heart, they delighted in presents; but they neither thought themselves entitled to a return for what they gave, nor laid under an obligation by what they received (5). They yielded to the impulse of passion, and the pleasure they felt was their recompense. Their gifts were directed by no view of an immediate or distant advantage; their generosity was no traffic of interest, and proceeded from no motive of design.

But, amidst all this ardor, they were averse from labor. The women and the infirm discharged the offices of the house. The warrior did not submit to any domestic occupation. He was to bask whole days by the fire; and a sloth, joyless and supine, was to succeed and to relieve the
briskness and fatigue of action (6). His admiration of fortitude, which was the cause of this indolence, and this contempt of drudgery, was at the same time to produce a stateliness in his behaviour. He was not to lose his virtue, or to weaken the vigor of his mind, in the practice of mechanic or unworthy pursuits. When he walked, he seemed conscious of importance; he cast his eyes to the ground, and looked not around him for the objects of a vain and frivolous curiosity.

In the diet of these nations, there was much simplicity; it consisted of wild apples, new-killed venison, and curdled milk. They expelled hunger without ostentation, or any studied preparations of food; but, in satisfying thirst, they were less temperate. When supplied to their desire in intoxicating liquors, they were no less invincible in vice than in valor (7). Yet, in the disgraceful moments of debauch, they applied to public affairs, and debated concerning peace and war; and, in the heat of their disputation and riot, the dagger was often to deform with blood the meetings of friendship and of business. In these seasons they imagined that their minds were disposed to conceive honest sentiments, and to rise into noble ones. But, in an after-period, the undissembled thoughts of every one were diligently canvassed; a proper attention being paid to the time when they were first delivered, and to the purpose which then employed them. It was their meaning to deliberate when they could not deceive, and to form resolutions when they could not err (8).
They did not live in towns, and could not endure to have their houses contiguous. They built as they found a spot to their fancy, as they were attracted by a fountain, a plain, or a grove. But, being unacquainted with a private property in land, they were not ambitious of possessions. They vied not in the extent or the fertility of their grounds, in the rearing of orchards, and in the inclosing of meadows. Corn was the only produce they required from the earth; and they divided not the year into proper seasons. They understood, and had names for winter, spring, and summer, but had no idea of the term, and little knowledge of the fruits of autumn (9).

In their religion they were gross, like almost all nations, whether savage or cultivated. They believed in a plurality of gods; but thought it derogatory from their majesty to shut them up within walls, or to fashion them in resemblance to any human form. Their groves were appropriated to the uses of devotion; and, in the awful respect inspired by silence in the deep recesses of their woods, they felt and acknowledged the power of their deities. To augury and divination they were much addicted; and they were fond to draw prognostics and intimation from the running of water, the flight of birds, and the neighing of horses. Their priests had greater authority than their kings or chieftains; for it was not by any principle of expediency or reason that their actions and conduct were to be ascertained and examined. They were governed by the impulses and dictates
of their divinities; and, being the interpreters of the will and intentions of these, they were able to exercise a jurisdiction uncontrollable and sacred (10).

The office of a magistrate was known and respected among these nations. The prince, or the chieftain of a district, with the body of his retainers or followers, constituted a court, which heard accusations, and determined concerning crimes. Traitors and defectors were hanged on trees. Cowardice, and the crime against nature, were considered as of equal atrocity; and the persons convicted of them were choked in mire and swamps by the pressure of hurdles. A corporal punishment, and compensations in corn or cattle, were the atonements of lesser delinquencies (11).

Noble birth, but more frequently the possession of superior qualities, entitled to the office and jurisdiction of a chief: And the general of an army was to command less by authority than from example. He drew respect and observation by his activity, his address, and the splendor of his exploits (12). Even the hopes and ambition of the simple warrior were made to depend on his personal honor and courage. Yet, with all this attention to merit, and with all their elevation of character, they were prone to deceive and to circumvent. They accounted it meritorious to steal upon their enemies in the darkest nights; they blackened their shields, and painted their bodies, to be terrible; and, to give ground, but immediately to return to the charge, was a common and an admired feat of their prudence. Cunning and stratagem appeared to
them to be wisdom; and, though remarkable for courage, both active and passive, they exposed it to suspicion by the arts which, in a cultivated age, are characteristic of the pusillanimous (13).

It is also remarkable, that, though attentive to justice, with a punctilious exactness, within the bounds of their particular nations, they despised it with regard to other states and communities. Beyond the frontier of his tribe, the German was a thief and a robber. While, in the one instance, his theft or depredation was a crime of the deepest die, and punished with death, it was, in the other, a mark of valor, and an expression of virtue. To make incursions against a neighbouring people, though at peace; to carry off their cattle, and to lay waste their territory, were actions of renown and greatness. They roused the ambition of the valorous, and were occupations in which they acquired reputation, and prepared themselves for scenes of greater danger and glory (14).

But, the circumstance in the customs of these nations the most valuable, and which, like all their more remarkable features, arose from their unacquaintance with property, was the passion they entertained for independence and liberty. Every person who was free, considered himself in the light of a legislator. The people prescribed the regulations they were to obey. They marched to the national assembly to judge, to reform, and to punish; and the magistrate and the sovereign, instead of controlling their power, were to respect and to submit to it. Stated or regular terms were
appointed for the convention of their public council; and a freedom of speech, entire and unlimited, was permitted. His age, his eloquence, his rank, and the honor he had acquired in war, were the qualities which procured attention to the speaker; and the people were influenced by persuasion, not by authority. A murmur coarse, and often rude, expressed their dissent: The rattling of their armor was the flattering mark of their applause (15).

While these institutions and manners are expressive, in general, of the German communities, there are exceptions which it is not my province to explain. In the enumeration which is made by the Roman historian of the Germanic tribes, there are perceivable unequal degrees of civilization and refinement. The Chauci, for example, were an improved and an illustrious nation, and supported their greatness by their probity. They were lovers of peace and quiet, and conterminers of avarice and ambition. They provoked no wars; engaged in no incursions or robberies; and, what may be considered as a certain proof of their power and valor, preserved their superiority, without having recourse to injuries and oppressions. When called upon, however, by the exigency of their affairs, they were not slow to take arms and to levy armies. They inhabited an extensive territory, were rich in men and in horses, and in peace and in war maintained their reputation. The picture of the Fenni, on the contrary, is that of mere rudeness. They had no arms, no horses, no religion. To the most savage fierceness, they had joined the
most abject poverty. They clothed themselves in the skins of beasts, fed, at times, on herbage, and slept on the earth. Their chief dependence was on their arrows; and, having no iron, they pointed them with bones. The women accompanied the men to the chase, and demanded a share of the prey. A covering, inwrought with boughs, was all the shelter which defended their infants from the rigor of seasons, and the ferocity of animals. To this miserable dwelling their young men returned; and here their old men found a refuge. These courses of barbarousness, this melancholy fadness, they preferred to the fatigue of cultivating the earth, and of building houses, to the agitations of hope and fear attendant on a care of their own fortunes, and on a connexion with those of others. Unapprehensive of any danger from men, and awed by no terror of the gods, they had reached a state which is nearly unattainable to all human endeavours—the being entirely without a wife [16].

The majority of the tribes or communities of Germany may be said to have occupied a middle state between the cultivation of the Chauci and the savageness of the Fenni. And it is sufficient to have selected and expressed the more general and the more distinguished particulars which regard their institutions, government, and character. With these in my view, I proceed to describe the condition of their women; a subject which, though little attended to by the learned, may lead to conclusions of interest and curiosity.
SECTION II.

An Idea of the German Women.

It has been asserted, that men, in savage and barbarous periods, are carried to the sex merely from the incitement of animal gratification, and that they feel not the power of beauty, nor the pleasures which arise from love and a multitude of facts have been produced from history to confirm this theory. It is concluded, of consequence, that, in such times, women are in an abject state of servility, from which they advance not till the ages of prosperity (1).

One would fancy it, notwithstanding, consistent with reason, to imagine, that the sexes, in every period of society, are important to each other; and that the member of a rude community, as well as the polished citizen, is susceptible of tenderness and sentiment. He is a stranger, indeed, to the metaphysics of love, and to the fopperies of gallantry; but his heart cannot be insensible to female attractions. He cannot but be drawn by beauty; he must know a preference in the objects of his affection; and he must feel and experience, in a certain degree, at least, that bewitching intercourse, and those delightful agitations, which constitute the greatest charm of cultivated life.

This opinion, I conceive, is strongly confirmed by the history of the Germanic states. Their general character, with particular and obvious facts, illus-
trate the importance and the consideration in which they held their women.

Even in the age of Caesar, the German tribes had conceived and acknowledged the idea and existence of a public interest, and, in general, had submitted to a mode of government in which the chiefs and the people had their departments as well as the prince. They are described in a similar, but a more cultivated situation, by Tacitus; and the spirit of liberty and independence which animated their actions, was to produce that limited and legal administration which still gives distinction and dignity to the kingdoms of Europe. Among such nations, accordingly, the women were necessarily free, and sensible only of the restraints which arise from manners.

The state of society, which precedes the knowledge of an extensive property and the meanness which flow from refinement and commerce, is in a high degree propitious to women. To treat them with cruelty does not consist with the elevation of sentiment which then prevails. Among the people, of whom I speak, even the slave was exposed to no studied insult or oppression (2). Of the women, the warrior and the citizen considered himself as the friend and the protector; and their weakness only served to render the attachment to them the more lasting and tender.

While courage and strength and feats of prowess gave glory to the men, the women were judged of by a different standard. They were studious to recommend themselves by the performance of
domestic duties. They attended to the cares of the family and the house; and the mother found a long and a serious occupation in the rearing of her children, who were not allowed to approach the father in public till a certain age (3). To her daughters she endeavoured to give the accomplishments which might win to them the chiefs who were most celebrated and powerful. To her sons she recited the exploits of their ancestors, and formed them to valor.

Nor are these the only sources of the respect which was paid to them. It has been often remarked, that, in every period of society, the women are more disposed to rapture and devotion than the men, and that their curiosity to pry into futurity is more extravagant. The superstitious weaknesses, however, of the sex, which, in refined times, are a subject of ridicule, lead to reverence and attention in a rude age. The Germanic armies seldom took the field without forcereesses; and these had an important share in directing their operations (4). In private and civil affairs, their authority was not less decisive. On the foundation of the wonder and astonishment excited by the knowledge arrogated by the women, by the skill they displayed in divination, and, above all, by the ceremony and the cruelty of the rites they practised, a solid and permanent influence was established (5). It was thought, that they had something divine in their nature; and the names of many of them, who were worshipped as divinities, have come down in history (6).
To attend to the qualities of plants, and to the curing of wounds, was another branch of their occupation (7); and, in times of war and deprecation, it is difficult to conceive a circumstance which could recommend them more. Nor were they inattentive to adorn their persons. The linen, which made the principal article of their dress, was of their own manufacture; and they had a pride in intermixing it with purple (8). They went frequently into the bath; their hair flowed in ringlets; a part of their charms was industriously displayed; and, in evidence of their beauty, there may be brought the testimony of the historian, and the song of the poet (9).

In the more serious and important wars in which these nations engaged, the chiefs and warriors seem constantly to have carried their wives and female relations along with them as an incitement to their valor. These objects of their affection they placed at a small distance from the field of battle: And the most terrible calamity which could befall them, was their captivity. By their importunity and wailing, it is recorded, that armies, in the moment of submission, have been recovered; and the stipulations of states were never so certainly secured as when some virgins of rank were delivered among the hostages (10). In the blood of their women, it was conceived there was a charm and a virtue; and hence it proceeded, that, to their uncles by the mother and to their fathers, children were the objects of an equal affection and tenderness (11).

But, what evinces their consideration beyond the
possibility of a doubt, is the attention they bestowed on business and affairs. They felt, as well as the noble and the warrior, the cares of the community. They watched over its interest, considered its connexion with other states, and thought of improving its policy, and extending its dominion. They went to the public councils or assemblies of their nations, heard the debates of the statesmen, and were called upon to deliver their sentiments. And, what is worthy of particular notice, this consequence in active scenes they transmitted to their posterity (12).

Such, in general, was the condition of women among our ancestors, while they were yet in their woods; and such, I should think, is in a great measure their state in every country of the globe in an age of society and manners, which knows not the cares, the corruptions, and the distinctions of property (13).
IT is not to be denied, that, before the idea of a public is acknowledged, and before men have submitted to the salutary restraint of law, the disorders of promiscuous love disturb and disfigure society (1). Yet, even in these wild and informal times, there exist parties, who, clinging together from choice and appetite, experience the happiness of reciprocal attentions and kindnesses; who, in the care of their offspring, find an anxious and interesting employment, and a powerful source of attachment; who, moved by love, by friendship, by parental affection and habitue, never think of discontinuing their commerce; and who, in fine, look forward with sorrow to the fatal moment when death is to separate them.

This cohabitation or alliance, attracting attention by its decency, its pleasures, and its advantages, would grow into a custom or a fashion. For, what men approve, they will imitate. To this use, therefore, it seems not unreasonable to refer the institution of marriage; and thus, before it is known as a political consideration, it, in some measure, subsists in nature. As men increase in their numbers, they perceive the necessity of attending to an union, which is no less important to society than to the individual, which has in view the support of the one, and the felicity of the other. A ceremonial
is invented which gives it authority and duration. The state takes a share in the cares of the lover, and prescribes the forms that are to bind him to his mistress. Nature, while she fits the sexes for each other, leaves it to policy or law to regulate the mode of their connexion.

The race of men who anciently inhabited Germany, are represented, as was formerly observed, in the condition of nations; and a legislature, composed of the prince, the nobles, and the people, directed their operations. This assembly, which gave a sanction to military expeditions, and adjusted alliances and treaties, managed also the objects of internal concern. It extended its jurisdiction over the women as well as over the other parts of the community, and ascertained the ceremonial of marriage.

When the individual was called from the house of his father, and invested with arms; when he was advanced from being a part of a private family to be a member of the republic, he had the capacity of entering into contracts, and of singling out the object of his affections. The parties who had agreed to unite their interests, having obtained the approbation of their parents and relations, made an interchange of gifts in their presence. The lover gave his mistress a pair of oxen, a bridled horse, a shield, a sword, and a javelin; and she, in her turn, presented him with some arms. It was thus they expressed their attachment to each other, and their willingness to discharge mutually the duties of the married state. This was their strongest tie.
these were their mysterious rites, these their conjugal deities (2).

Nor, let it be fancied that, in this ceremonial, there was any thing humiliating to the woman. It suited exactly the condition of a rude society, and must not be judged of by the ideas of a refined age. The presents, indeed, were expressive of labor and activity; but labor and activity were then no marks of reproach; and, in fact, the joined oxen, the prepared horse, the presented arms, instead of indicating the inferiority of the bride, denoted strongly her equality with her husband. They admonished her, that she was to be the partner and the companion of his toils and his cares, and that, in peace and in war, she was to sustain the same fatigues, and to bear a part in the same enterprises (3).

The fidelity of the married women among these nations, and the constancy and tenderness of their attachment, express also their equality with the men and their importance (4). A strict observance of the marriage-bed was required of them. The crime of adultery was rare; and, in the severity of its punishment, the respect is to be traced which was paid to modesty. It was immediate, and inflicted by the husband. He despoiled the culprit of her hair and garments, expelled her from his house before her assembled relations, and whipped her through the whole village (5). Of the young women, the most powerful recommendation was the reserve and coyness of their demeanour. A violation of modesty was never pardoned. Nor
youth, nor beauty, could procure a husband. Vice was not here sported with; and, to corrupt and to be corrupted, were not termed the fashion of times (6).

In the simplicity of their manners, they found a preservation against vice more effectual than the laws of cultivated states. The gallantries of the young men began late; their youth was, therefore, inexhausted. Those of the young women were not earlier. They mingled, when they were equal in age, in prosperity, and strength, and had a progeny who expressed their vigor. Disgrace attended on celibacy; and the old were honored in proportion to the number and the merits of their descendants. A dread of pain and the care of beauty checked not generation (7). The mother suckled her own children (8); and, in discharging this task, anticipated the greatness and the felicity she was to acquire and to experience from their virtues, and in their gratitude (9).

It was thus the chastity of the women was guarded: It was thus their importance was confirmed. No allurements of public shows and entertainments relaxed their virtue, and insinuated into them the love of pleasure; no incitements of luxury inflamed their desires and exposed them to corruption; and what the Romans seem to have considered as particularly fatal, no acquisitions of knowledge and of letters discovered to them the arts which minister to love (10).

In some of their states or communities, the respect of modesty was so great, that it was not
lawful but to virgins to marry; who, without the hope or wish of second nuptials, received one husband, as they had done one body and one life, and had no thoughts or desires beyond him. It was their ambition and pride, if they survived the objects of their affection, to preserve, unfulled, the honors of widowhood; and, when the barbarians had made settlements in the provinces of Rome, when their manners had refined, and the sex were, in some measure, emancipated from this restraint, the spirit of the usage continued to operate. It augmented, as to the widow, the matrimonial symbols; a larger dower than usual was necessary to overcome her reluctance to a second bed (11); and, while it encouraged the king or the magistrate to exact a greater fine from her on her marriage (12), it entitled her to a higher compensation for injuries (13).

Amidst the modesty of such usages and manners, we must not look for polygamy. It was unknown to these nations; though, it is to be allowed, that a few of the chiefs or more renowned princes were surrounded with a number of wives (14). This, however, was a matter of grandeur, not of appetite; and its source is to be found in maxims of policy, in the ambition of individuals, and in that of states. A prince, to support or extend his greatness, connected himself with different families; and the deliberations of his tribe not unfrequently pointed out to him the alliances he should court (15).
To the degrees of consanguinity and blood, concerning which nature has dictated so little, and polity so much, it is not to be conceived that they paid a scrupulous attention in their marriages (16). It is a subject on which no infant communities are exact. They attended to it when, having falled from their woods, they grew refined by time, observation, and experience.
CHAPTER II.

The political Establishments of the Barbarians after they had made Conquests.

SECTION I.


The Romans, corrupted and servile in every quarter of the empire, were unable to oppose the valor and the activity of the Germanic tribes. And, the manners of the conquerors and the conquered being essentially different, and even contradictory, the revolution produced in the condition of Europe was total and decisive (1). It is thence chiefly, by an attention to the way of thinking which prevailed in their original seats, that the state is to be investigated which the barbarians exhibited on their conquests; and that the origin and the nature of those institutions are to be discovered, which, overturning in every country they invaded, the ancient forms of legislation and government, arose on their ruins. In the matterly treatise, accordingly, in which Tacitus paints, with his inimitable pencil, the manners of these
nations, I must look for the foundations of this state, and these institutions.

The members of a German nation," says this accomplished historian, "cultivate, by turns, for its use, an extent of land corresponding to their number, which is then parcelled out to individuals in proportion to their dignity: These divisions are the more easily ascertained, as the plains of Germany are extensive; and, though they annually occupy a new piece of ground, they are not exhausted in territory (2)."

This passage abounds in instruction, the most important. It informs us, that the German had no private property in land, and that it was his tribe which allowed him annually for his support a portion of territory; that the property of the land was invested in the tribe, and that the lands dealt out to individuals returned to the public, after they had reaped the fruits of them; that, to be entitled to a partition of land from his nation, was the distinction of a citizen; and that, in consequence of this partition, he became bound to attend to its defence, and to its glory.

With these ideas, and with this practice, the Germans made conquests. In conformity, therefore, with their ancient manners, when a settlement was made in a province of the empire, the property of the land belonged to the victorious nation, and the brave laid claim to their possessions. A tract of ground was marked out for the sovereign; and, to the inferior orders of men, divisions corresponding to their importance were allotted.
But while, in their original seats, such partitions were annual, it was expedient that they should now be invested in the possessor. A more enlarged idea of property had been gradually unfolding itself (3); and, though it was convenient to, and suited the views of a narrow community, to take back its land, the measure was not practicable in an extensive society. Nations were no longer to shift their habitations. The boundaries of particular states were to be respected. The tribe ceasing to wander, the individual was also to be stationary. The lot or partition now received by him, was to continue in his possession, and to be an object of his industry. He was to take root, if I may speak so, in a particular spot. He was to bestow on it his affection; it was to feed and to enrich him with its produce. His family were to feel an interest in his estate; his sons were to succeed to him. Heirs were to fail in the blood of the proprietor. It affected him, that the crown or a stranger should possess the subject of his toils and attentions. The powers of sale and donation came to be understood. The right of holding a landed territory with no limitation, and of disposing of it at pleasure, was known and prevailed.

The advantages of property open themselves with time. They were not observed by the German in his woods. But, when he was no longer the member of a narrow community, and felt his unimportance in the extensive kingdoms which arose on his conquests, when other professions were to be exercised beside that of the warrior, his attention turned from the public to himself. Ideas of interest pressed
in upon him on every side. He was no longer to act chiefly from appetite and passion. He was to look forward to distant prospects. He was to busy himself for advantages which were to arrive slowly, and which were often to elude his diligence. He had passed from the empire of manners to that of laws. Riches had become a source of distinction; and his mind was to be torn with cares, anxiety, and ostentation.

When we mount up to the origin of customs, we are to be struck with their simplicity. The lot or partition to the sovereign was to constitute his domains. It was to support his splendor, to defray the expenses of government, and to maintain his household. The lot or partition to the individual was to give rise to allodiality. It was the land which was free, which was named propriety, in contradistinction to tenure (4); and, being still the mark of a citizen, it subjected him, as in Germany, to the general obligation of taking arms in defence of the community (5).

But the domains of the sovereign, and the lands of lot or partition to the people, could not exhaust all the territory of a conquest. They were principal and natural objects of attention. Yet, after their appointment, there were much extensive property, and many fair possessions. The ancient maxims of the people did not allow them to seize these by a precarious occupation. Men, who had connected the property of land with the tribe, and not with the individual, could not conceive any title in consequence of which they might arrogate possessions
to humor their fancy, or to flatter their pride. Their ancient notions continued their operation: The community was concerned with what no man could claim. The lands, accordingly, which were assigned neither to the sovereign nor to the people, which formed not the domains of the former, nor the partitions of the latter, were the lands of the state or the Hisc. And, under this appellation, in fact, they are known in the codes of the barbarians (6).

Of the territories of this kind, the king, as representing the state, was to take the direction; and, in the grants and disposal of them, the barbarians were also to be assisted by the usages to which they had been accustomed in their woods.

A German state comprehended a sovereign, who acted for the interest of the community, chieftains, who governed in different districts, and the masses of the people. The sovereign and the chiefs owed their rank or estimation, sometimes to their birth, but oftener to their merits. The former was ambitious to support, with lustre, the honor he sustained; the latter were studious to deserve his favor, and to vie with one another. The people, as they were struck with the qualities of particular chiefs, ranged themselves under their banners, and devoted themselves to their fortunes. It was the great emulation of the chiefs to excel in the number and the courage of their retainers. This was the dignity which most attracted them, and the power they courted most. These were their ornaments in peace, and their defence in war. In the field it was infamous in the
chief to be surpassed in valor; it was infamous in the retainers not to equal the valor of the chief. To guard and to defend his person, and to ascribe to his glory all their gallant acts, was their greatest oath. The chief fought for victory; the retainer for the chief (7).

These connexions, and this subordination, followed the barbaric nations into their settlements. And here we may perceive the foundations of the feudal association.

But land, which was the tie that bound together the members of a feudal kingdom, had no concern in these appearances. The chief could not confer a landed property on his retainer, because land had not yet descended to individuals. It obeyed, however, the order of nations; and the more powerful of the Gaulic and German communities had been in the practice of granting, under military service, proportions of territory to inferior tribes. Communities were anciently the vassals of communities (8). Here then was the essence of the feudal grant.

Accustomed to this way of thinking, and to these institutions, a German state found itself in a province of the Romans. The sovereign, from gratitude and interest, was disposed to court the chiefs who were the associates of his victories; and the chiefs were not insensible of their importance. The retainers were proud of their prowess and their services; and the chiefs were forward to show their favor and affection to men who constituted their strength. Land had begun to be detached from nations, and to be connected with individuals. And the conquest
obtained was in danger from the turbulence of the times, and from new invaders.

The situation of a German state which had acquired a settlement, produced thus the necessity of drawing closer the connexion of the sovereign and the chiefs, and of the chiefs and the people. Its ancient usages concurring with this situation, pointed out the conduct to be pursued. The lands of the jisc were the medium which was to operate the purpose that was so necessary. The sovereign took the direction of these; hence possessions flowed to the chiefs, under the burden of presenting themselves in arms at the call of the sovereign; hence the chiefs dealt out lands to their retainers, under the like injunction of continuing to them their aid (9); and thus a political system was founded, which was to act in society with infinite efficacy.

Of this system the intention and the spirit were national defence, and domestic independence. While it called out the inhabitant and the citizen to defend his property and to secure his tranquillity, it opposed barriers to despotism. Growing out of liberty, it was to promote the freedom of the subject. The power of the sovereign was checked by the chiefs, who were to form a regular order of nobility; and the aristocracy, or the power of the chiefs, was repressed by the retainers and vassals, who, constituting their greatness, were to attract their attention. The chief, who oppressed his retainers, was to destroy his own importance. It was their number and their attachment, which made him formidable to his prince and to his equals.
In this manner, I would account for the origin of the domains of the sovereign, and of allodiality; for that of fiefs (10); and for the genius they displayed in their earliest condition. And this short deduction may be sufficient to exhibit a general idea of the state of land among the barbaric tribes on their conquests.

SECTION II.

Of the Property of the Women. The Dower, the Morgengabe, and the Marriage portion. The Communication to the Women of the Powers of Succession and Inheritance. The advancement of Manners.

Having distinguished the property of the men, it is fit I should treat that of the women. I have observed, that, among the ancient Germans, and the case, it is to be presumed, is similar in every rude community, the property of the land was invested in the tribe or nation. His proportion of corn was allotted to the individual by the magistrate, and corresponded to the number of his family, the degrees of his merit, and the importance of his service. He derived, accordingly, no source of influence from the property of land. His chief, and almost only riches, consisted in cattle (11); and, in those rude and remote times, the more powerful supported their hospitality and magnificence by war and violence. They collected their
retainers, and committed incursion and plunder upon neighbouring nations; and their states discouraged not a practice which was favorable to the military virtues.

In this situation, it is obvious, that no property could be possessed by the women (2). They had neither land nor cattle, and could demand no share of the booty procured by robbery and depredation. While they remained in their virgin state, they continued, therefore, in the families of which they were descended (3); and, when they passed, by marriage, into other families, their husbands became bound to attend to and to provide for them. Hence the custom recorded by Tacitus: ‘*Dote* non uxor marito, sed uxor maritus offert.’ On the death of the husband, the wife received this provision; and, it was the object of it to render her alike independent of the house she had left, and of that into which she had entered (4).

This provision consisted, doubtless, of goods; and, even in this form, it is to be conceived, it discovered itself after the Germanic conquests. When time, however, refinement, and necessity, had taught the barbarians the uses of wealth, and individuals were proud of acquisitions in land, it assumed more enlarged appearances; and property opening to the women, they acquired a source of consideration which they had not formerly known, and which was about to produce consequences of no less moment to themselves than to society.

The *dos* or *dower* came to consist in money and in land. It was to arise out of a personal estate,
out of allodial property, or out of fiefs. With the widow, it remained during her life, and on her death it passed to the heirs of her husband. In general, it was regulated by his deed. In some places it was governed by custom. It was sometimes constituted by ceremonies, which grew out of the particular situation of parties (5); and, when no private act had taken place, where no custom directed, and where no peculiarity of situation prevailed, it was fixed and ascertained by established and statutory laws (6).

Nor was it a dower only, that the husband bestowed on the wife. The morning after his nuptials, he made her a present, which was valuable in proportion to his generosity and wealth. This acquisition is known by the appellation of morgengabe (7); and, possessing it in full property, she could convey it away during her life, allow it to pass to her heirs, or dispose of it by a deed, to take effect after death (8).

The experience of the uses of property was to produce a solicitude to possess it. While the dower and the morgengabe gave distinction to the wife, the daughter was to know the necessity of acquisitions, and to wish for them. The parent was to encourage her hopes, and to gratify his affections. He was to make her state correspond to his riches and his dignity. The refining intercourse, and the rising luxuries of society, were to demand this attention. A portion was to go from the bride to the husband. The personal fortune, to which the daughter had been a stranger in the
days of Tacitus, made its appearance. And wealth in the female sex, joining itself to beauty and wit, contributed to support and extend their dominion.

The custom, in fact, of giving portions to the women, is to be traced to an early period in the laws of the Germanic and Celtic nations (9). The present, simple and slight in its origin, grew complicated and extensive. It kept pace with luxury and opulence. The dower, which before was chiefly directed by the will of the husband, became now a formal matter of treaty and agreement. The bride had a title to stipulate her claims. The riches she brought, and her rank, were duly considered; and a provision in proportion to both were allotted (10).

The portion of the daughter, like the dower and the morgengabe of the wife, was originally to consist of goods, and then of money. It was afterwards to consist of land. But, when the father was first to bestow land on the daughter, it is to be understood, that it was a part of his property, which was free or alodial. Fiefs, in their commencement, could not be enjoyed by the women. The actual service of the shield was required from the vassal. To admit them to alodiality, was even a deviation from the spirit of the ancient customs of the barbarians; and, it was only in the evolution of the rights of property, that they were permitted to acquire it. A property then, or an alodial possession, might come to them by donation or by testament. But, by the rules of regular succession, it was to go to the sons; and, according to
to law, they were only to inherit, when there were to be no sons, or when the sons were to fail (11). The communication, however, of these privileges was a powerful addition to their importance, and was to lead to advantages still greater.

The capacity to receive allodiality by grant, by gift, by testamentary destination, and to enter to it by succession, in the event of the want of male heirs, or after their demise, introduced and fostered the idea of their admission to fiefs. As the original rudeness of the barbaric nations yielded to successive improvements, as manners softened, and the arts of peace were cultivated, the propensity to add to their emolument, and to contribute to their pleasure, grew stronger. If they could not march to the field, and charge an enemy at the head of their vassals, they might perform these offices by substitution. An approved warrior might discharge, for the female possessor of a fief, the military duties to which it was subject. A right to succeed to feudality was, by degrees, acknowledged in the sex; and, when invested in the grant, they were to exert all its civil rights. Though they deputed its military command, they could sustain its honors and prerogatives. They were to hold courts, and exercise jurisdiction in ordinary fiefs; and, while they attended to these cares in noble ones, they were also to assemble with the peers, in the great assemblies of the state in every country of Europe, to deliberate, to vote, and to judge. Neither the military service incident to every fief, nor the obligation of attending the assembly of
the peers or the council of the nation incident to
fiefs, which were noble, could prevent the adv-
vancing condition of the women. The imbecillity
of their nature, which gives a strength to all their
other attractions, made them fulfil the first duty
by delegation: The last they were long to perform
in person (12).

From the moment that settlements were made
in the territories of Rome, the women were to im-
prove in advantages. The subordinations of rank,
which before had been chiefly discriminated by
merit, were now marked more palpably by riches
and property. Modes of a distant and respectful
demeanour were invented. New sentiments of dig-
nity and meanness became known. Displays of
elegance and luxury took place. The extent and
order of established kingdoms rendered men more
domestic. Less engaged with the public, the female
sex engrossed more strongly their regard and notice.
They approached them with greater reverence;
they courted them with an affidity that was more
tender and anxious. The women, in their turn,
learned to be more vain, more gay, and more
calling. They grew studious to please and to con-
quers. They lost somewhat of the intrepidity and
fierceness which before were characteristic of them.
They were to affect a delicacy, and even a weak-
ess. Their education was to be an object of great-
er attention and care. A finer sense of beauty was
to arise. They were to abandon all employments
which hurt the shape and deform the body. They
were to exert a fancy in dress and in ornament (13).
They were to be more secluded from observation. A greater play was to be given to sentiment and anticipation. Greater reserve was to accompany the commerce of the sexes. Modesty was to take the alarm sooner (14). Gallantry, in all its fashions, and in all its charms, was to unfold itself.

But, before I can express, with precision, the consideration they attained, and perceive, with distinctness, the splendor which the feudal association was to throw around them, I must look for the extension of fiefs, and for the sources of chivalry. Fiefs and chivalry were mutually to act upon one another. The feudal association was to direct and to foster chivalry; and, from chivalry, it was to receive a support or lustre. They were plants which were destined to take root about the same period, and to sympathize in their growth, and in their decline. The seeds of them had been gathered by the barbarian in his woods; and, to whatever soil or climate his fortune was to carry him, there he was to scatter them with profusion.

SECTION III.


Proud with victory, with riches, and with independence, the conquerors of the Romans separated to enjoy their possessions and their grandeur.
The chiefs continued, as of old, to possess a military authority and a civil jurisdiction. The prerogatives, which before they had arrogated as due to their merit, they now enjoyed as the holders of fiefs. In war they commanded their vassals and retainers, and they judged of their disputes in times of peace. The inhabitants of their territories were soldiers and subjects. Their castles and household bore a resemblance to the palace, and the establishment of the sovereign. They had their officers and their courts of justice; and they exercised the powers of punishment and mercy. They even continued to exert the privilege of making war of their private authority; and the sovereigns of Europe could behold subjects in arms, who infringed not their allegiance to the state.

This right of spreading, with impunity, the tumults of war, operated as the leading source of the disorders of the middle ages, and marks expressively their condition and manners. It demands, of consequence, an attention which I must refuse, at present, to the other prerogatives of nobility; and, in order to discover its origin, I must glance at the beginnings of criminal jurisprudence.

In the early ages of society, the individual depends for protection on himself. There is no tribunal to which he can appeal for redress. He retaliates, with his own arm, the insult he has suffered; and, if he is unable, of himself, to complete his revenge, he engages his friends to assist him. Confederacies are formed for attack and for defence, and the members composing
them are animated with the same passions. In this perturbed state of mankind, the punishment of the offender is disproportioned to his crime. Men, frantic with rage, are unacquainted with pity or with reason. The most barbarous actions, and the most cruel disorder, are perpetrated and prevail. It is perceived, that the interest of the community is injured. Yet the right of revenge, so dangerous in the hand of the individual, cannot, without injustice, be torn from him. It is equitable that he be satisfied for the wrongs he has endured, but it is no less equitable, that the public do not suffer by his violence. He is allowed, accordingly, to gratify his resentment, but through the power of the magistrate, who, while he feels for the injuries he has received, can also look with compassion to the criminal (6).

It is not, however, to be imagined, that this improvement takes place at once, and that every individual is, in the same moment, made to relinquish the exercise of his right of revenge. In rude times, the chief distinction among men arises from their personal qualities. Force of body, and vigor of mind, procure then to their possessors the greatest attention and respect. A distinguished warrior, or a chief, must be treated very differently from the vulgar; and, though the exercise of private revenge is to be ravished from the herd of the community, it is yet to continue in the jurisdiction of the great and the powerful. What is possessed by a few, grows in time a mark of honor, and a privilege of nobility (7).
Among the Germans, in the days of Tacitus, the exercise of the right of revenge had passed, in a great measure, from the multitude. It remained, notwithstanding, with the chiefs; and they were not, on their conquests, in a disposition to renounce so splendid a distinction. They enjoyed, as a prerogative, the exercise of a right, which is destructive to order and society; and, in times when the art of legislation and government was only approaching to perfection, their claims were acknowledged. The freedom of revenge, at first unlimited, was confined; and the barons made war of their private authority (8).

It is thus that this prerogative arose which filled Europe with confusion. Nobles, haughty and independent, did not think of accepting a fine as a compensation for an insult, and submitted not their disputes to a judge. They brought them to the decision of the sword; and their vassals and retainers, entering into their sentiments and feelings, partook of their glory and disgrace. They were rivals whom nothing could unite, but the enemies of the state, or the encroachments of the sovereign. To repress these they could act with cordiality. But, in their usual carriage to one another, they were sullen, jealous, and proud; and, it was their chief employment to vie in displays of magnificence, or to try their strength in hostility.

In the state of tumult, bloodshed, and oppression, produced by the exercise of the prerogative of private war, a most important distinction was effected between the holders of fiefs, and the possessors of property. While, in the imperfection of government, the magistrate could not extend his power with equal
force over all the orders of men in the society; while
the weak were exposed to the insults and the passions
of the strong; while nobles, haughty and inde-
pendent, could legally prosecute their resentments
with the sword, revenge their wrongs, and gratify
their avarice and cruelty, the holders of fees enjoyed
a supreme advantage over allodial proprietors. A
Lord and his retainers, connected together in an
intimate alliance, following the same standard, and
adopting the same passions, could act with concert
and efficacy. But allodial proprietors were altogether
disqualified to defend themselves. Being distant and
disengaged, they could form and support no con-
tinued or powerful confederacy; and the laws, in
fact, did not permit them to enter into factions
and hostilities. The violence of the times created
an absurdity. It gave to gifts under service, and
revertible to the grantor, a value superior to lands
which were held in full property, and at the disposal
of the possessor. It made necessary the conversion of
propriety into tenure.

Nor was this the only consideration which had
weight with the possessors of property. In every
monarchy, but in one more particularly that is
governed by feudal ideas, rank and pre-eminence
attract chiefly the attention, and excite the ambition
of individuals. The king being the fountain of honor,
and distinctions flowing from his favor, the ranks of
men were nicely adjusted; and, in proportion as they
approached to his person, they exacted and received
respect. From this principle it naturally proceeded,
that allodial proprietors were treated with contempt.
Holding by no tenure, and occupying no place in the feudal arrangements, they could not draw observation. Their pride was alarmed, and they wished for the respect and the security of vassals.

Princes bent on the extension of fiefs, discouraged these proprietors. Their ambition, their abilities, and their prerogatives, furnished them with the greatest influence; and they employed it to give universality to a system, which was calculated to support the royal dignity and the national importance. Compositions for offences inferior to those which were allowed to a vassal, were deemed sufficient for the proprietors of allodiality. In the courts of justice they felt the disadvantages of their condition. Mortified with regal neglect, without sufficient protection from the laws, exposed to the capricious insolence and the destructive ravages of the great, disgusted with rudeness, contempt, and indignity, they were driven into the circle of fiefs. They courted the privileges and the protection which were enjoyed by vassals. They submitted their estates to tenure, selecting to themselves a superior the most agreeable, granting to him their lands, and receiving them back from him as a feudal donation (9).

In this direction of affairs the extension of the feudal institutions was unavoidable. The landed property was everywhere changed into feudality. The empyre of fiefs was universal. Even land, the great source and medium of tenure, was to be insufficient for the multitude of those, who were pressed to be vassals, by their wants and feebleness, and who were invited to be so by the great, in the wildness of their contentions, and amidst the enor-
mity and misrule created by the exercise of private war. Every matter that was an object of profit, of pleasure, of use, or of commerce, was to become the foundation of a fief. The right of judging the delicts committed in a forest, the right of the chase or of hunting in a certain district, the tax on public roads, the privilege of escorting merchants to a fair or a market, offices of trust and of justice, the swarms of bees in a woody territory, the profits of a mill, the fishing in a water, the allotment of a pension, and other rights and possessions in still wider deviation from the original grounds or doctrines of feudality, were to be held as fiefs (10). The imagination was exhausted to invent new methods of infeudation. None could be too romantic or whimsical, while strength or importance was derived from them to the grantors. The holders or vassals were bound to military service, and subject to obligations; and the chief and the eminent, in consequence of this policy, extended, supported, and maintained their public magnificence, their private consideration, and the ruinous conflicts and animosities in which they were involved by the passions of others, and their own.

SECTION IV.

Arms, Gallantry, and Devotion. The origin of Knighthood and the Judicial Combat, of Torneaments and Blazonry. The Sources of Chivalry.

When the inhabitants of Germany falled from their woods, and made conquests, the change of condition they experienced produced a change in their manners. Narrow communities grew into extensive
kingdoms, and petty princes, and temporary leaders, were exalted into monarchs. The ideas, however, they had formerly entertained, and the customs with which they had been familiar, were neither forgotten nor neglected. The modes of thought and of action which had been displayed in their original seats, advanced with them into the territories of Rome, continued their operation and power in this new situation, and created that uniformity of appearance which Europe everywhere exhibited. Their influence on the forms of government and polity which arose, was decisive and extensive; and, it was not less efficacious and powerful on those inferior circumstances which join to constitute the system of manners, and to produce the complection and features that distinguish ages and nations.

The inclination for war entertained by the Germanic states, the respect and importance in which they held their women, the sentiments they had conceived of religion, did not forswear them when they had conquered. To excel in war was still their ruling ambition, and usages were still connected with arms. To the sex they still looked with affection and courtesy. And their theology was even to operate in its spirit, after its forms were decayed, and after Christianity was established. Arms, gallantry, and devotion, were to act with uncommon force; and, to the forefathers of Germany, we must trace those romantic institutions, which filled Europe with renown, and with splendor; which, mingling religion with war, and piety with love, raised up so many warriors to contend for the palm of valor and the prize of beauty.
The passion for arms among the Germanic states was carried to extremity. It was amidst scenes of death and peril that the young were educated: It was by valor and feats of prowess that the ambitious signalized their manhood. All the honors they knew were allotted to the brave. The sword opened the path to glory. It was in the field that the ingenuous and the noble flattered most their pride, and acquired an ascendency. The strength of their bodies, and the vigor of their counsels, surrounded them with warriours, and lifted them to command (1).

But, among these nations, when the individual felt the call of valor, and wished to try his strength against an enemy, he could not of his own authority take the lance and the javelin. The admission of their youth to the privilege of bearing arms, was a matter of too much importance to be left to chance or their own choice. A form was invented by which they were advanced to that honor.

The council of the district, or of the canton to which the candidate belonged, was assembled. His age and his qualifications were inquired into; and, if he was deemed worthy of being admitted to the privileges of a soldierr, a chieftain, his father, or one of his kindred, adorned him with the shield and the lance. In consequence of this solemnity, he prepared to distinguish himself; his mind opened to the cares of the public; and the domestic concerns, or the offices of the family from which he had sprung, where no longer the objects of his attention (2).

To this ceremony, so simple and so interesting, the institution of knighthood is indebted for its rise.
The adorning the individual with arms, continued for ages to characterize his advancement to this dignity. And this rite was performed to him by his sovereign, his lord, or some approved warrior. In conformity, also, to the manners which produced this institution, it is to be observed, that even the sons of a king presumed not to approach his person before their admission to its privileges; and the nobility kept their descendants at an equal distance. It was the road, as of old, to distinction and honor. Without the advancement to it, the most illustrious birth gave no title to personal rank (3).

Their appetite for war, and their predatory life, taught the Germans to fancy that the gods were on the side of the valiant. Force appeared to them to be justice, and weakness to be crime (4). When they would divine the fate of an important war, they selected a captive of the nation with whom they were at variance, and opposed to him a warrior out of their own number. To each champion they presented the arms of his country; and, according as the victory fell to the one or the other they prognosticated their triumph or defeat. Religion interfered with arms and with valor; and the party who prevailed, could plead in his favor the interposition of the deity. When an individual was called before the magistrate, and charged with an offence, if the evidence was not clear, he might challenge his accuser. The judge ordered them to prepare for battle, made a signal for the onset, and gave his award for the victor (5).

Nor was it only when his interest and property were at stake, that the German had recourse to his
fword. He could bear no stain on his personal character. To treat him with indignity or disdain, was to offend him mortally. An affront of this kind covered him with infamy, if he forgave it (6). The blood of his adversary could alone wipe it away; and he called upon him to vindicate his charge, or to perish.

In these proceedings, we perceive the source of the judicial combat, which spread so universally over Europe, and which is not only to be considered as a precaution of civil polity, but as an institution of honor (7).

These nations, so enamoured of valor, and so devoted to arms, courted dangers even in pastime, and sported with blood. They had shows or entertainments, in which the points of the lance and the sword urged the young and the valiant to feats of a desperate agility and boldness; and in which they learned to confirm the vigor of their minds, and the force of their bodies. Perseverance gave them expertness, expertness grace, and the applause of the surrounding multitude was the envied recompence of their audacious temerity (8).

These violent and military exercises followed them into the countries they subdued, and gave a beginning to the jousts and tourneaments, which were celebrated with so unbounded a rage, which the civil power was so often to forbid, and the church so loudly to condemn; and which, resisting alike the force of religion and law, were to yield only to the progress of civility and knowledge (9).

Unacquainted with any profession but that of war, disposed to it by habit, and impelled to it
by ambition, the German never parted with his arms. They accompanied him to the senate-house, as well as to the camp, and he transacted not without them any matter of public or of private concern (10). They were the friends of his manhood, when he rejoiced in his strength, and they attended him in his age, when he wept over his weakness. Of these, the most memorable was the shield. To leave it behind him in battle, was to incur an extremity of disgrace, which deprived him of the benefit of his religion, and of his rank as a citizen (11). It was the employment of his leisure to make it conspicuous. He was sedulous to diversify it with chosen colors; and, what is worthy of particular remark, the ornaments he bestowed, were in time to produce the art of blazonry and the occupation of the herald. These chosen colors were to be exchanged into representations of acts of heroism. Coats of arms were to be necessary to distinguish from each other, warriors who were cased completely from head to foot (12). Christianity introduced the sign of the cross; wisdom and folly were to multiply devices; and speculative and political men, to flatter the vanity of the rich and great, were to reduce to regulation and system what had begun without rule or art.

It is thus I would account for knighthood, and the single combat, for tourneaments and blazonry; institutions which were to operate with an influence not less important than extensive. And, in the same distant antiquity, we meet the source of that gallantry and devotion, which were to mount them to so wild a height.
To the women, while he was yet in his woods, the German behaved with respect and observance. He was careful to deserve their approbation; and they kept alive in his mind the fire of liberty, and the sense of honor. By example, as well as exhortation, they encouraged his elevation of sentiment and his valor. When the Teutones were defeated by Marius, their women sent a deputation to that commander, to require that their chastity might be exempted from violation, and that they might not be degraded to the condition of slaves. He refused their request; and, on approaching their encampment, he learned, that they had first stabbed their infants, and had then turned their daggers against themselves (13). To some German women taken in war, Caracalla having offered the alternative of being sold or put to the sword, they unanimously made choice of death. He ordered them, notwithstanding, to be led out to the market. The disgrace was insupportable; and, in this extremity, they knew how to preserve their liberty, and to die (14). It was amidst this fierceness and independency, that gallantry and the point of honor grew and prospered. It was the reproach of these women, which, on the banks of the Rhine and the Danube, filled the coward with the bitterest sorrow, and stained him with the most indelible infamy. It was their praise which communicated to the brave the liveliest joy and the most lasting reputation. Hi, says Tacitus, cuique sanctissimi testes, hi maximi laudatores (15).

These notions did not perish when the Germans had made conquests. The change of air, and of
situation, did not enseele this spirit. The women were still the judges of personal merit; and, to some distinguished female, did the valorous knight ascribe the glory of his achievements. Her smile and approbation, he considered as the most precious remcompence; and, to obtain them, he plunged into dangers, and covered himself with dust and with blood. Ah! si ma Dame me voyoit! exclaimed the knight when performing a feat of valor (16).

Nor were arms and the attachment to women the only features of importance in the character of the German. Religion, which, in every age and in every nation, gives rise to so many customs, mingled itself in all his transactions. He adored an invisible being, to whom he ascribed infinite knowledge, justice, and power (17). To profit by his knowledge, he applied to divination (18); to draw advantage from his justice, he made appeals to his judgment (19); and to acquire, in some degree, his power, he had recourse to incantation and magic (20). The elements and the visible parts of nature, he conceived, at the same time, to be the residue of subordinate divinities, who, though the instruments only of the agency of the supreme intelligence, had a great superiority over men, and were entitled to their attention and reverence (21). Every tree and every fountain had its genius; the air, the woods, the water, had their spirits. When he made a step, or looked around him, he felt an impulse of awe and of devotion. His anxiety, his amazement, his curiosity, his hope and his terror, were every moment excited. The most
most ample scope was afforded by this theology for the marvellous. Every thing, common as well as singular, was imputed to supernatural agents. Elves, fairies, sprights, magicians, dwarfs, enchanters, and giants, arose (22). But, while the lesser divinities of these nations attracted notice, it was to the supreme intelligence, that the most sincere and the most flattering worship was directed; and this god, amidst the general cares which employed him, found leisure to attend more particularly to war, and valued his votary in proportion to his courage. Thus religion and love came to inflame, and not to soften the ferocity of the German. His sword gained to him the affection of his mistress, and conciliated the favor of his deity. The last was even fond of obeying the call of the valiant; he appeared to them in battle, and fought by their side (23). Devotion, of consequence, was not less meritorious than love or than valor (24). Christianity did not abolish this usage. It descended to the middle ages. And, to love God and the ladies, was the first lesson of chivalry (25).

But, though arms, gallantry, and devotion, produced the institutions of chivalry, and formed its manners, it is not to be fancied, that they operated these effects in a moment; and that, immediately on the settlements of the barbarians, this fabric was erected. The conquerors of Rome continued to feel and to practise in its provinces, the instincts, the passions, and the usages to which they had been accustomed in their original seats. They were to be active and strenuous, without
perceiving the lengths to which they would be carried. They were to build, without knowing it, a most magnificent structure. Out of the impulse of their passions, the institutions of chivalry were gradually to form themselves. The passion for arms, the spirit of gallantry, and of devotion, which so many writers pronounce to be the genuine offspring of these wild affections, were in fact their source; and it happened, by a natural consequence, that, for a time, the ceremonies and the usages produced by them, encouraged their importance, and added to their strength. The steps which marked their progress, served to foster their spirit; and, to the manners of ages, which we too often despise as rude and ignoble, not to political reflection or legislative wisdom, is that system to be ascribed, which was to act so long and so powerfully in society, and to produce infinite advantage and infinite calamity.

It is to those only who apply to rude societies the ideas of a cultivated aera, that the institutions of chivalry seem the production of an enlightened policy. They remember not the inexperience of dark ages, and the attachment of nations to their ancient usages. They consider not, that if an individual, in such times, were to arise of a capacity to frame schemes of legislation and government, he could not reduce them to execution. He could not mould the conceptions of states to correspond to his own. It is from no pre-conceived plan, but from circumstances which exist in real life and affairs, that legislators and politicians acquire an
ascendency among men. It was the actual condition of their times, not projects suggested by philosophy and speculation, that directed the conduct of Lycurgus and Solon.

SECTION V.

The Institutions of Chivalry, the Pre-eminence of Women, Politeness, and the Point of Honor.

From the state of the feudal nobles, and the exertion of the right of private war, it resulted, that the lower orders of men were courted and attended to in an uncommon degree. The military retainers of a noble, and the inhabitants of his lands, constituted his power; and it was not his interest to neglect men who might offer their service to an enemy. They shared in his property and greatness, were flattered with his countenance, and formed the bulwark which supported him. His own sons, those of his vassals and tenants, and the ambitious youth whom his renown attracted from a distance, learned under his direction the art of war, fought his battles, and entitled themselves to the honors of chivalry.

Every descendant of a gentleman, or every free-born person, had a capacity to bear arms, and to aspire to knighthood: And a long train of services prepared him to receive it. From his earliest years he attended the court, and resided in the castle of his lord; and in this school he acquired all the knightly virtues. The emulation of his
equals, the example and admonitions of his chief, and the company of the ladies, from whose number he was to select the accomplished fair one, to whom he was to ascribe all his sentiments and his actions, inflamed in him the passion for war, infused into his mind a zeal for religion, and instructed him in all the arts of a respectful gallantry. From the performance of domestic duties, which were the first that employed his attention, he was called to the management of horses and of armor (1). He then entered into greater familiarity with his lord, and accompanied him in all his hazardous expeditions. He became accustomed to perils and to toils; he acquired, by degrees, the whole science of attack and of defence; and, when his hard apprenticeship was over, he acted himself as a knight, and fought and wished for still severer trials to exercise his ambition (2).

To adorn him with arms, was originally, as I remarked, the simple ceremonial which invested the warrior with knighthood. But greater pomp and solemnity came to express his advancement to this dignity. Its importance had grown with time, the feudal institutions had fostered a taste for splendor; and the Christian clergy, who succeeded to the privileges of the Germanic priests, improving on their ambition, made religion interfere in its forms (3).

The candidate presented himself in a church, where he confessed his sins, and declared his repentance and remorse. Absolution was then given him, and he passed the night in watching and pious meditation. In the morning he heard mass, and, approach-
ing the altar, placed his sword upon it, which was returned to him, with benedictions, by the hands of the priest. The eucharist was next administered to him; and, having been bathed, to express the purity which was necessary for the state into which he was to enter, he was dressed in rich robes, and his spurs and his sword were put on. He then appeared before his sovereign or his chief, and, receiving a blow upon the neck, was dubbed a knight. This parade, courtly as well as sacred, was concluded with feasting and merriment (4).

The splendor, however, which accompanied the exaltation to knighthood, was proportioned to the wealth and the birth of the candidate. The same prodigal ostentation and punctilious grandeur, attended not the investiture of an inferior person, and the descendant of a feudal lord. The rich and the great displayed, on these occasions, their magnificence, their ingenuity, and their taste (5). To furnish an aid, accordingly, to make his eldest son a knight, was one of the benevolences which were due to a feudal proprietor from his vassals; and, during the prevalence and purity of the Gothic manners, no contribution was paid with greater cheerfulness. But while, in times of festival and peace, the admission to this honor was thus flately and ambitious, a gentle stroke with a sword was sufficient, during war, to entitle to its privileges; and, in this form, in the day of a battle, or in the hour of victory, it was usual to bestow it, in order to reward the valiant, and to encourage prowess (6).

When the warrior was promoted to knighthood,
the company and tables of the sovereign and the
nobles were open to him; and in times, when per-
sonal qualities were the great sources of renown
and merit, no distinction was more considerable or
important. It was permitted to him to wear gold,
fur and silk, and to surpass in the richness of his drees
and arms. And, while his external appearance
marked him out from inferior men, he was distin-
guished in his own order by his ensigns-armorial,
and the peculiarities of his blazonry (7). He had cer-
tain privileges in hunting; in executions for debt,
it was not lawful to take his horse and armor (8);
and in the courts of law, fines beyond the usual
proportion were awarded to compensate his wrongs.
When a prisoner, and in the power of a conqueror,
his rank preserved him from an unworthy or igno-
minious treatment. His word or promise might be
relied upon with the firmest assurance. Fetters and
chains were only fit for the ignoble. When the
chief, or the baron to whom he was more particu-
larly attached, required not his aid, he might
enter into the service of another master. Pensions
and presents rewarded his prowess; and he was
enriched by the share he received in the spoils of
an enemy, and by the ransoms of his captives (9).
His usual appearance in the field was on horse-
back (10); attended by an esquire; and, if his wealth
so increased, that he could afford to have knights
in his train, his sovereign allowed him the use of a
banner or a standard like the barons, and, like
them, he exercised a civil as well as a military
jurisdiction (11).
Nor did his death terminate the honors which were paid to him. The solemnity and ceremonies of his funeral, expressed his merits and the public regrets. A monument was erected to him, and the ornaments with which it was embellished, suit- ing his actions and history, inspired his posterity with a generous emulation. The sword which he had carried to battle, the shield which had defended his body, and the other articles of his dress and armor, became the objects of respect and veneration. The most illustrious persons courted their possession, and churches were often esteemed the only proper repositories of these attendants of his victories and valor (12).

Splendid with knighthood, of which the honor was so great as to give dignity even to kings and to princes, the generous and the aspiring were received in every quarter with attention and civility. The gates of every palace, and of every castle, were thrown open to them; and, in the society of the fair, the brave relieved the severities of war, and fed their passion for arms. Though it was the study of the knight to consult the defence and the glory of the State, and to add to the strength and the reputation of his chief, yet the praise of his misdeeds was the spring of his valor, and the source of his activity. It was for her that he fought and conquered. To her all his trophies were consecrated. Her eye lighted up in his bosom the fire of ambition. His enterprise, his courage, his splen- dor, his renown, proclaimed the power and the fame of her perfections.
The women failed not to feel their dominion. The dignity of rank and its proprieties, the pride of riches, the rivalship of beauty, unfolded their excellence and charms. Their natural modesty, the sanctity of marriage, the value of chastity, improved with time and with Christianity. The respectful intercourse they held with the knights, the adoration paid to them, the tournois at which they presided (13), the virtues they inspired, the exploits achieved to their honor, concurred to promote their elevation and lustre. To their enamoured votaries they seemed to be divinities; and toils, conflicts, and blood, purchased their favor and their smiles.

Placed out to general admiration, they studied to deserve it. Intent on the fame of their lovers, watchful of the glory of their nation, their affections were roused; and they knew not that unquiet indolence, which, softening the mind, awakens the imagination and the senses. Concerned in great affairs, they were agitated with great passions. They prospered whatever was most noble in our nature, generosity, public virtue, humanity, prowess. They partook in the greatness they communicated. Their softness mingled with courage, their sensibility with pride. With the characteristics of their own sex, they blended those of the other.

Events, important and affecting, actions of generosity, enterprise, and valor, exhibited in the course of public and private wars, were often employing their thoughts and conversation. And, in the seasons of festivity and peace, the greater and
the lesser tournaments exercised their attention and anxiety (14). These images of war were announced with parade and ceremony. Judges were appointed to determine in them, and to maintain the laws of chivalry; and they were generally selected from among the aged knights, who came in crowds to live over again the scenes they had acted, and to encourage and direct the intrepidity and the skill of the aspiring youth. The combatants, entering the lists slowly, and with a grave and majestic air, pronounced aloud the names of the ladies to whom they had vowed their hearts and their homage. This privilege they had obtained at the expense of many a gallant achievement; and they were presented by the fair ones with a riband, a bracelet, a veil, or some detached ornament of their dress, which they affixed to their helmets or their shields, and considered as the pledges of victory (15). Every signal advantage won in the conflicts, was proclaimed by the instruments of the minstrels; and the voices of the heralds. Animated by the presence of the ladies, by the sense of their former renown, and of that of their ancestors, the champions displayed the most brilliant feats of activity, address, and valor. And the ladies, entering into their agitations, felt the ardors of emulation, and the transports of glory (16). When the tournaments were finished; the prizes were distributed with a ceremonious impartiality. The officers who had been appointed to observe every circumstance which passed in the conduct of the combatants, made their reports to the judges. The suffrages of the
spectators were collected. After serious deliberation, in which the most celebrated personages who were present were proud to assist, the names of the conquerors were pronounced. Ladies were then chosen, who were to present to them the symbols of victory; and, in these fortunate moments, they were permitted to imprint a kiss on the lips of these fair dispensers of renown. Amidst the contending praise of the judges and the knights, the music of war, and the shouts of the people, the victors were now conducted to the palace of the prince or the noble who exhibited the tournament. There, at the feast, which concluded their triumph, they were exposed to the keen look, and the impassioned admiration of whatever was most accomplished in beauty and in arms. And, in the height of a glory, in which they might well have forgot that they were mortal, they employed themselves to console the knights they had vanquished, and ascribed their success to fortune, not to valor; displaying a demeanour complacent and gentle, disarming envy by modesty, and enhancing greatness by generous sympathy and magnanimous condescension (17).

The operation of love and of glory, so powerful in the institutions of which I speak, was advanced and inspired by religion; and principles, the most efficacious in our nature, built the fabric of the Gothic manners. Devotion had characterized the barbarian in his woods. The god of war was propitious to the brave, the consecrated standard led to victory (18), and an immortality and a paradise took away its terrors from death (19). Christianity,
which looks with a sovereign contempt to every
other mode of faith; which holds out to the believer
the most flattering joys, and which, not contented
with haunting guilt with remorse in the present
scene, lifts it from its grave to torture it with eternal
pains in another existence, Christianity, I say,
was more calculated, than the superstitions of pa-
ganism, to impress the imagination and the heart (20).
The rite of baptism taught the follower of Odin
to transfer his worship to Christ. To defend Chris-
tianity with his sword and his life, became a sacred
vow, to which every knight was ambitious to sub-
mit. He considered himself as a saint, as well as a
hero; and, on the foundation of his piety, the
successors of St Peter were to precipitate the armies
of Europe upon Asia, and to commence the crusades,
those memorable monuments of superstition
and heroism (21). The lady, not less than the
knight, was to feel the influence of this religion.
Society was to be disturbed with the sublime extra-
vagance of fanatics, who were to court perfections
out of the order of nature. Mortifications, austeri-
ties, and penances, were to be meritorious in pro-
portion to their duration and cruelty. The powers
and affections of the mind and the heart, were to
ficken and to languish in frivolous and fatiguing
ceremonials. The eye of beauty was to fadden in
monasteries and in solitude, or to light the unholy
fires of a rampant priesthood. The deity was to be
worshipped in abjectness and in terror, as if he
contemned the works he had made, and took delight
in human dejection and wretchedness.
But, while ecclesiastics, designing and ambitious, were to abuse mankind by the means of this new faith, it was to be beneficial to manners by the purity of its moral. While it was to guard the sexes from frailty, it invigorated the sense of justice; and, in a period of disorder and confusion, taught the knight to be strenuous in vindicating the wrongs of the injured. The weak and the oppressed, the orphan and the widow, had a particular claim to his protection. To disobey their call, was to infringe a law of chivalry, and to incur dishonor and infamy. He seemed, in some measure, to be intrusted with the power of the magistrate; and the fashion of the times made him forward to employ his arm, and to spill his blood in the cause of innocence and virtue.

Thus war, gallantry, and devotion, conspired to form the character of the knight. And these manners, so lofty and so romantic, were for ages to give a splendor to Europe, by directing the fortunes of its nations, and by producing examples of magnanimity and valor, which are unequalled in the annals of mankind. But their effects in policy and war, however conspicuous, are of little consideration, when compared with the permanent tone they communicated to society. The spirit of humanity, which distinguishes modern times in the periods of war, as well as of peace; the gallantry which prevails in our conversations and private intercourse; on our theatres, and in our public assemblies and amusements; the point of honor which corrects the violence of the passions, by improving our delicacy, and the sense of propriety and decorum;
and which, by teaching us to consider the importance of others, makes us value our own; these circumstances arose out of chivalry, and discriminate the modern from the ancient world.

The knight, while he acquired, in the company of the ladies, the graces of external behaviour, improved his natural sensibility and tenderness. He smoothed over the roughness of war with politeness. To be rude to a lady, or to speak to her disadvantage, was a crime which could not be pardoned. He guarded her possessions from the rapacious, and maintained her reputation against flander. The uncourteous offender was driven from the society of the valiant; and the interposition of the fair was often necessary to protect him from death. But the courtesy of the knight, though due in a peculiar manner to the female sex, extended itself to all the business and intercourse of civil life. He studied a habitual elegance of manners. Politeness became a knightly virtue; it even attended him to the field of battle, and checked his passions in the ardor of victory. The generosity and the delicate attentions he showed to the enemy he had vanquished, are a satire on the warriors of antiquity (23). His triumphs were disgraced by no indecent joy, no brutal ferocity. Courteous and generous in the general strain of his conduct, refined to extravagance in his gallantry to the ladies, and the declared protector of religion and innocence, he was himself to be free from every stain. His rank, his duties, and his cares, made him aim at the perfection of virtue. His honor
was to be as incontestable as his valor. He profes-
sseed the most scrupulous adherence to truth and
to justice. And, the defects of civil government,
and his personal independence, gave an uncommon
value and propriety to his personal fidelity. The
formalities of the single combat, which were so
scrupulously just, as to remove even the suspicion
of every thing unfair and dishonorable, fostered
the punctilious nicety of his demeanour (24). To
utter a falsehood; was an offence of which the
infamy was never to be effaced. The culprit was
degraded from knighthood; a punishment more
terrible to the warriour than death (25). To give
the lie to a knight was, of consequence, to insult
him in a point the most tender; and, while he was
careful to maintain his integrity, and ambitious to
entitle himself to its honors, he was ardent and
forward to defend himself against an improper ac-
cusation, and to punish the abuser of his name.
His delicacies on this head demand respect and
commendation; yet the rigid moralist has been
pleased to make them the object of his ridicule. His
ridicule, however, is as absurd as it is contemptu-
ous. It applies not to the purer ages of chivalry,
when honor was inseparable from virtue; and,
perhaps, it is unjust in every application, but
when it refers to individuals, who, being soul
with meanness, lay claim to the consideration of
probity and character, and insolently appeal to their
swords to support their pretensions.
A View of Society in Europe, in its Progress from Rudeness to Refinement.

Book II.
Chapter I.
Of the Spirit of Feuds.

Section I.

A Distinction in the History of the Feudal Association. The Feudal Incidents. Their Advantages in one Situation. Their Disadvantages in another. The Influence of these different Situations on Society and Manners.

The generosity of the barbaric manners was to suffer by the growing propensity to interest. Refinement and property were to open up the selfishness of mankind; and the feudal association, which was originally an exercise of bounty and gratitude, was to be a source of oppression and wantonness.
The fruits of love, amity, and friendship, were to become the foundation of discord and contention. The superior and the vassal, the chief and the retainer, so intimately connected, and so fondly attached, were to be hostile to each other. Violence and corruption were to disfigure society; and scenes of splendor, liberty, and greatness, were to be succeeded by rapacity, oppression, and meanness.

The distinction of these different situations, though neglected by the antiquary, the lawyer, and the historian, is yet a matter of the greatest importance. It is, in some measure; the key to the history of modern nations. It will lead us to discover many mistakes and misapprehensions which conceal and deform topics of the highest moment and curiosity. It will overthrow many positions which have perplexed and misled the researches of the learned, and the reasonings of the speculative.

While the greatness and simplicity of those manners, which the conquerors of Rome brought with them from their woods, continued to animate their posterity, the feudal association was noble in its principles, and useful in its practice. The solicitudes, and the mercenary spirit which rise up with commerce, were unknown, and the fullest scope was given to nature and the passions. The actions and conduct of men were directed by sentiment and affection. In the ardor of private confederacies, the general feelings of generosity were augmented. The emotions of the heart increased their force by confinement. And the lord and the vassal were linked to each other in the closest connexion. The arms and the
the zeal of his followers were the strength and the
bulwark of the chief or the superior. The bounty
and the power of the chief or superior, were the
subsistence and protection of the followers or the
vassals. Their interests and their passions were the
same; and a constant communication of good offices
kept alive their attachments.

The vassal, kneeling before his lord, and putting
his hands into his, acknowledged him for his superior;
'I become,' said he, 'your man, from this day for-
ward, for life, and limb, and earthly honor.' The
lord, receiving him in his arms, gave him the kiss,
which bestowed his countenance and favor. This
rite, known under the appellation of homage, ex-
pressed submission and reverence on the part of the
vassal, protection and defence on that of the lord.
The oath of fidelity, or the engagement of fidelity,
was then pronounced. 'Hear this, my lord,' said
the vassal, 'I will be faithful and loyal to you, for
the tenements I hold. So help me God and his
saints.' They were exact to obligations in
which were comprised their interest, their glory,
and their pleasure. In every act of civil life, in peace
and in war, they found alike the uses and advan-
tages of their union. In the castle of the lord, the
vassal added to his retinue, and proclaimed his mag-
nificence. In his court he assisted in the administra-
tion of justice. In the field, he fought by his side,
and covered his person with his shield. On the foun-
dation of their connexion, and of that of the land
or sief, which the former bestowed on the latter, a
train of incidents were to arise, the unequivocal ex-
pressions of friendship and habitude, the tender and affectionate 
fruits of an intercourse the most devoted and zealous.

While the grants of land were precarious, or for life, the superi-
ors were fond to educate in his hall the expectants of his seels. 
And, when they descended to a series of heirs, or in perpetuity, 
she was careful, on the death of the feudator, to take the charge of 
his son, and his estate. The former was a hope to him of future 
greatness. He protected his person, directed his education, and 
watched over his concerns. He felt a pride in observing his ap-
troaches to manhood, and delivered to him, on his majority, 
the lands of his ancestor, which he had been studious to improve. 
These cares were expressed in the incident of wardship.

The vassal, on entering to his seel, conscious of gratitude, and won 
with the attentions of his lord, made him a present. This acknowledgment, so 
natural, and so commendable, produced the incident of relief.

Grateful for the past, and anxious for the future favor of his chief, the vassal did not incline to ally 
himself to a family which was hostile to him. The 
chief was ambitious to add to his power and splendor, 
by consulting the advantageous alliance of his vassal. 
They joined in finding out the lady whose charms 
and whose connexions might accord with the pas-
tions of the one and the policy of the other. This 
attention gave establishment to the incident of 
marriage.

When the superior was reduced to distress and 
captivity, in the course of public or of private
wars, when he was in embarrassment from prodigality or waste, when he required an augmentation of means to support his grandeur, or to advance his schemes and ambition, the vassal was forward to relieve and assist him by the communication of his wealth. On this foundation there grew the incident of *aid*.

When the vassal gave way to violence and disorder, or when by cowardice, treachery, or any striking delinquency, he rendered himself unworthy of his fief, the sacred ties which bound him to his lord were infringed. It was necessary to deprive him of his land, and to give it to a more honorable holder. This was the origin of the incident of *escheat* (2).

Amidst the contention of friendship, and the mutuality of mind which exercised and informed the lord and the vassal, there was experienced a condition of activity, liberty, and happiness (3). The vassals attended to the retainers who were immediately below them. In their turn, they were courted by the lords, whose strength they constituted (4). And the lords gave importance to the sovereign. A subordination was known, which was regular, compact, and powerful. The constituent parts interested in government (5), as well as war, were attentive, in their several departments, to the purposes of order and justice; and, in national operations, they acted with an union that made them formidable. Of this association, political liberty was the result. And, while this unfortunate state of things continued, the people,
in every country of Europe, came in arms to their national assembly, or appeared in it by their representatives (6).

Such, in a more particular manner, was the condition of the Anglo-Saxon period of our history; and the people, happy alike in their individual and their politic capacity, as men and as citizens, were to bear, more reluctantly, the oppressions of the Norman times. The impression of their felicity was to descend down with vivacity, in the succession of the earlier Norman princes, and to produce the most memorable struggles for liberty.

Nor was it in England only that such convulsions were experienced. The same injustice and oppressions which were to shake this nation, prevailed in every country of Europe, and gave a beginning to those contentions which were to terminate in the destruction of their ancient independence.

In this island alone, the valor and the fortune of its inhabitants were to teach freedom to revive in the midst of tyranny. The barons and the people were to inform King John of his condition and their own; and to give those lessons of instruction to his successors which they are never to forget without danger; and which a future tyrant was to confirm with his blood, while an injured nation made it to stream from the scaffold to atone for an insolent ambition, and violated laws.

Disorders, which were to be felt throughout Europe, are not to be referred entirely to the rapacity and the administration of princes. There must be a cause more comprehensive and general, to which they are chiefly to be ascribed.
The original manners which the conquerors of the Romans brought from their forests, were to spend their force. The high sentiments which had resulted from the limited ideas of property, were to decay. The generous maxims of the feudal association, and the disinterested wildness of chivalry, were to suffer with time. Property was unfolded in all its relations, and in all its uses. It became a distinction more powerful than merit, and was to alter the condition of society. By separating the interests of the lord and the vassal, it was to destroy for ever the principles of their association; and the incidents, which, in a better age, had fostered their friendship, were to feed their rage, and to prolong their animosity. As their confederacy had been attended with advantages and glory, their disaffection was marked with debasement and subjection. Out of the sweets of love, a fatal bitterness was engendered. Sufferance was to succeed to enjoyment; oppression to freedom. Society and government were to be tumultuous and disorderly; and diseases and infirmities were to threaten their decay.

In the prevalence of property and of mercenary views, the ward of the infant vassal, which the superior once considered as a sacred care and an honorable trust, was to be regarded in no other light than as a lucrative emolument. The acquisitions of the vassal, which, in their state of agreement and cordiality, were a strength to the lord, seemed now to detract from his domains. He committed spoil on the estate which, of old, it was
his pride to improve. He neglected the education of the heir. He gave repeated insults to his person. The relations of the vassal were often to buy from the superior the custody of his person and his lands. The right was more frequently to be let out to exercise the rapacity of strangers. The treasury of princes was to increase with this traffic; and subject-superiors were to imitate, as well from necessity as from choice, the example of princes (7). The heir, on his joyless majority, received the lands of his ancestor; and, while he surveyed, with a melancholy eye, his castles, which bore the marks of neglect, and his fields, which were deformed with waste, new grievances were to embitter his complaints, and to swell his passions.

The relief, which originally was no more than a present, at the pleasure of the vassal, on his entering into the fief, was consolidated into a right. An expression of gratitude was converted into a debt and a burden. The superior, before he invested the heir in his land, made an exaction from him, in which he had no rule but his rapacity. His demand was exorbitant and grievous. And if the heir delayed too long to extinguish this fine of redemption, or was unable to pay it, the superior continued his possession of the estate. Rigors, so humiliating and so frantic, produced clamor, discontent, and outrage. Mitigations were to be applied to them, and to prove ineffectual. Laws were to be made against them, and to be disregarded (8).

The marriage of the vassal, which could not be abused while their association was firm and their
interest mutual, became a most ruinous perquisite, when their association was broken, and their interest discordant. The superior could give his vassal in marriage to whom he pleased. This right he exerted as a property. It might be purchased from him by the vassal himself, or by a stranger. The marriage of the vassal, without the consent of the superior, involved the forfeiture of the estate, or was punished with oppressive penalties. It was a rule, indeed, resulting out of their former habitudes, that the heir should not be married to his disparagement (9). But this rule was overlooked amidst the violence of the times. The superior had no check but from his humanity, the vassal no relief but in remonstrance.

This right, so mortifying to the male heir, was a stretch of still wilder oppression, and more ferocious cruelty, when exercised on the female ward. Her hand might be tendered at the will of the superior. He might pay no attention to her affections. She was to submit at his mandate to indecent embraces, unsanctioned with love. Her beauty was to lose its sweets, and her heart its enjoyments, to feed his avarice, and to gratify his whim. Her relations were often to buy from him a privilege so frightful; and the unfeeling tyrant was to paint the horrors of its exertion, to extort his demand (10).

The aid which, in happier times, the vassal bestowed out of benevolence to relieve the distress, and to assist the grandeur of his lord, became a burden and a tax in the misery of their disaffection. It was arrogated as a duty and a tax. The lord
called for an aid or contribution, when his eldest daughter was married, when his eldest son was made a knight, and when, having been taken in war, his own person was to be ransomed. These were esteemed the legal occasions when exactions could be made (11) But custom and practice authorized the requisition of aids on pretences the most frivolous. When the crown or the lord was disposed to be oppressive, they could find a reason for an aid; and wants, not his own, were to affect every moment the substance of the vassal (12).

While their confederacy was maintained, it was not on any flight foundation, that the sief could be taken from the vassal. Cowardice, dishonor, treachery, or treason, were then the causes of escheat. The lord was not to be so offended with lesser delinquencies, as to take possession of the estate. In the times, however, of their disagreement, the causes of forfeiture were to multiply, and he was to be active to enforce them. Trespasses and trifles were to be sufficient grounds for the forfeiture of lands, of which the possessor was offensive. The vassal held a precarious and dangerous territory; and, with a mind disposed to be hostile to his chief, was to observe to him an attentive and punctilious demeanour. If he refused too long to attend the court of the superior, and to give his oath of fidelity; if he happened to commit the slightest infringement of his oath; if he foresaw any misfortune that was to befall his lord, and neglected to inform him of it; if, by any act, he was to affect the credit or the reputation of his
superior; if he should chance to reveal any private circumstance concerning him; if he should grant an infeudation in any other form than that in which he held his own; if he should make love to the wife or the daughter of his lord, or should care for his sister, while yet a virgin and unmarried; these, and reasons still more absurd, were to forfeit the estate to the superior, and to involve the ruin of the vassal, and that of his family (13).

A system of oppression the most destructive was thus established; and, by a strange peculiarity in the history of mankind, the same incidents were to act in the production of situations the most opposite. In one period, they were to encourage liberty and happiness; in another, rapacity and savageness. Prosperity and vigor attended the feudal association in its youth. Its maturity was marked with peevishness and infirmities; and a crowd of observers, being only to see it in this condition, were to mistake its spirit, and to survey it without enlargement.

The monks, who, on the revival of letters, presumed to chronicle the transactions of men, looked to the past with the prejudices of their own times. They could know, and could comprehend, no manners but their own. The cultivated historian was to observe and to complain of their omissions; but, instead of laboring to supply them, he was only to arrange their materials, to hold out, with lustre, some superior names, and to give his narrative the charm of picture and ornament. The lawyer and the antiquary
were to be equally uninstructive; while the former confines his remark to the legislation and the practice of his own age; and while the latter, amusing himself in the search of dates and of trifles, seeks not to advance into any general views, or to catch the spirit of those ancient periods, which provoke his sweat and his toil.

The usages and customs which the barbaric tribes brought from their woods, the remote source of all their laws, transactions, and establishments, were to be observed with a transient regard. They are, notwithstanding, the sure guides which are to direct the inquirer in the darkness and obscurity of the middle times. They point to, and evince the distinction that is now made in the history of the feudal association. And, they are to lead to other distinctions of curiosity and usefulness.

SECTION II.

A Distinction in the History of Arms and Chivalry. The Sovereign is considered as the Fountain of Honor. The Epoch of the Grandeur of Chivalry. The Decline of Fiefs. The Remedy for their Recovery. The Invention of Knight-service. The Knight's Fee. The Distinction between the Knight of Tenure and the Knight of Honor. Fiefs under Knight-service.

The decline of the Gothic manners, while it affected so strongly the feudal association, did not fail to extend its influence to chivalry and arms.
Every possessor of a fief conferred, of old, at his pleasure, the dignity of knighthood; and every person who had been admitted to knighthood, had a title to bestow it. But, when the feudal connexion was infringed, and its generous principles were destroyed, the feudatory was disposed no longer to seek out the meritorious whom he might advance to an honor, which was to be an advantage, and to reflect a glory to his superior. He was now the enemy, not the friend of his lord, and wished neither to add to his splendor in peace, nor to his power in war. He had grown more selfish with time, and the knowledge of property. He was to avoid, not less from interest than passion, the having knights in his train. The right which it had been his pride to exercise, he regarded with coldness. And, what the possessor of the fief was careless to bestow, the simple knight did not pertinaciously arrogate as a prerogative. The prince or sovereign, from whom it had always been the greatest favor to receive this dignity, came, by degrees, exclusively to confer it. At the head of the state and of arms, he was to be considered as the fountain of honor.

The distinction of knighthood, accordingly, did not immediately fall in the declension of the feudal association. It felt, indeed, the shock which separated the interests of the superior and the vassal; but, surviving its impulse, it was to rise, for a time, in height and splendor. When in the creation only, and at the disposal of the Prince, it was to acquire a value from his greatness. It was to
be given, for a season, with more choice and reserve, than when at the will of the possessor of the fief, and of the simple knight. Higher seats of prowess, the possession of greater wealth, more illustrious descent, were to be required in its candidate. This was the epoch of its lustre and renown. Heralds, skilful in pedigrees and armories, were to multiply. The duel was to improve in ceremony and parade; tournaments were to advance in magnificence; and, a court of chivalry, extensive in its jurisdiction, was to regulate deeds of arms, and usages of war (1).

But, while the feudal association in its decline was thus to contribute to the elevation of the ancient chivalry, by threatening its ruin, it was to produce effects of still higher importance, and of an operation not less universal. It was to give a new appearance to siefs, and a more regular form to the feudal militia. It was to protract the fall of a system already ruinous, to create new disorders, and to lead to new establishments.

Though the cordiality of the lord and the vassal was decayed, the grant of land from the former to the latter continued its obligations. The vassal was held by a tie, which he could not renounce without forsaking his importance. His property and subsistence fastened him to an enemy. His passions and his duties were at variance. He might hate the person of his lord, but he was to bow to him as his superior. The grant of land he enjoyed, bound him to the performance of military service. With a cold heart, he was to buckle
himself in his armor; and, with reluctant steps, he was to follow the march of his chief. Of old, it had been his fondest attention to carry all his strength against an enemy, that he might display his own greatness, and add to the magnificence of his superior. He now furnished unwillingly the least assistance in his power. The fervor of his former conduct was never more to advance the measures of ambition. And, in this state of things, the feudal militia was to obstruct and retard, rather than to forward the operations of princes.

In the heart of a populous kingdom, and surrounded with subjects accustomed to arms, the feudal sovereign was thus to feel an unnatural weakness. A malady, so formidable, could not but produce an anxiety for its cure. And, what is no less certain than peculiar, in the different countries of Europe, the same remedy was applied to it. 

Fiefs, or the grants of land under military service, had advanced from being annual to be for life; and, from being donations for life, they were to proceed to be hereditary. It was before the establishment of this ultimate point in their progression, that the happiness of the feudal association was disturbed. And, it was the establishment of this point which was to afford the opportunity to princes of recovering, in some degree, their greatness. While the cordiality of the vassal was maintained, a general obligation of military service was sufficient to induce him to marshal all his force in the field. When this cordiality was destroyed, policy was to extort what his generosity and attach-
ment had conferred. Lands were to be burdened with a full and exact proportion of soldiers. The giving them out in perpetuity was the season for annexing this burden. An expedient, natural, and not to be opposed, suggested itself. The tenure of knight-service was invented.

A portion of land, of which the grant, by the agreement of the giver and the receiver, entitled to the service of a soldier or a knight, was a knight’s fee. An estate, of two hundred fees, furnished, of consequence, two hundred knights. Manors, baronies, and earldoms, were thus powerful, in proportion to their extentsiveness. The grants from the sovereign to the nobles claimed the service of so many knights; and the sub-infeudations of the nobles enabled them to perform this service (2). The tenants of the crown who were not noble, had also their fees, and furnished proportionally their knights. Grants in capite, or from the sovereign, and the sub-infeudations of vassals, called out the force of the kingdom. The prince, the nobility, and the people, were in the capacities of a general, officers, and soldiers. A call to arms put the nation into motion. An army, numerous and powerful, could be assembled with expedition, exact in its arrangements, and in a state for defence and hostility (3).

Such, I conceive, was the origin and nature of the tenure of knight-service. And thus, in the history of the feudal institutions, there are two remarkable periods; the epoch which preceded the invention of knight-service, and the epoch during which it prevailed.
The knights produced by this tenure, differed most essentially from the knights of whom I have formerly spoken. But, though the train of thinking into which I have been led, points to their peculiarities with an obvious clearness, the mistakes of grave men, and an attention to perspicuity, oblige me to express their distinctive characters [4].

The one class of knights was of a high antiquity; the other was not heard of till the invention of a fee. The adorning with arms and the blow of the sword, made the act of the creation of the ancient knight; the new knight was constituted by an investment in a piece of land. The former was the member of an order of dignity which had particular privileges and distinctions; the latter was the receiver of a feudal grant. Knighthood was an honor; knight-service a tenure. The first communicated splendor to an army; the last gave it strength and numbers. The knight of honor might serve in any station whatever; the knight of tenure was in the rank of a soldier.

It is true, at the same time, that every noble and baron were knights of tenure, as they held their lands by knight-service. But the number of fees they possessed, and their creation into rank, separated them widely from the simple individuals, to whom they gave out grants of their lands, and who were merely the knights of tenure. It is no less true, that the sovereign, without conferring nobility, might give even a single fee to a tenant; and, such vassals in capite of the crown, as well as the vassals of single fees from a subject, were
the mere knights of tenure. But the former, in respect of their holding from the crown, were to be called to take upon themselves the knighthood of honor; a condition, in which they might rise from the ranks, and be promoted to offices and command. And, as to the vassals in capite of the crown, who had many fees, their wealth, of itself, sufficiently distinguished them beyond the state of the mere knights of tenure. In fact, they possessed an authority over men who were of this last description; for, in proportion to their lands, were the fees they gave out, and the knights they commanded (5).

It was, in this manner, that the tenure of knight-service came to recover the feudal militia, at a time when it was perishing in weakness. But, though it bound more closely, in the connexion of land, the superior and the vassal, by the fixedness of the service it enjoined, it could not bring back their ancient cordiality. It gave a strength and consistency to the military department of the feudal institutions; but it removed none of their civil inconveniences and burdens. These, on the contrary, were to increase during its prevalence. It was to brace, ohly, with a temporary vigor, a system which no prudence or art could accommodate to refining manners.

The incidents, which had grown with the progress of fiefs, still continued their operation. Every grant by the tenure of knight-service, was attended with homage and fealty, and was exposed to wardship and relief, to marriage, aid, and escheat. The superior
superior had still his pretensions and his claims; the vassal was still to suffer and to complain. Promises of the relaxation of the feudal perquisites, were to be made by princes, and to be forgotten. Legal solemnities of restraint were to be held out, and, occasionally, to produce their effect. But, palliatives, feeble or forced, were not to control the spirit of the system and the times. Fiefs, while they sustained, in the tenure of knight service, the grandeur of the European states were wasting with internal debilities. And the eye, in surveying their strength and magnificence, can trace the marks of an approaching weakness and decline.

I HAVE endeavoured to investigate the rise and nature of the feudal grant, and the varying spirit of the feudal association; I have attempted to distinguish the chivalry of arms, and the chivalry of tenure; and, I have ventured to open up the origin of knight service, which was to place the feudal institutions in their last, and most interesting situation. It is now fit I should mark the different periods in the progression of fiefs, express, in one view, their birth, growth, and maturity, and enter into applications of the reasonings I have made. The use of my principles will thus be confirmed. And, in performing this task, I foresee I must also meet with errors and prejudices, which the talents
of ingenious men have consecrated; but of which, it is the tendency to load history with difficulties, and to perplex science with doubt.

In the manners of the ancient Germans, I have found the source and spirit of the feudal laws. To these, the grant of land under military service has a certain and decisive reference. Its appearance, at the will or pleasure of the grantor, was even a consequence of the limited ideas of property, and of the forms and regulations which directed the condition of land while these nations remained in their woods. They could have no conception, on their conquests, of a gift of land in perpetuity; because, of such gifts they had no knowledge. The object of the grants then made, was military service; their duration was the pleasure of the grantor; and the spreading of such donations through the different orders of the state, from the sovereign to the chiefs, and from the chiefs to the retainers, connected together the inhabitants of a kingdom.

But the new situation of the barbarians on their settlements, and the natural advancement of manners, were to communicate to them ideas of property. Their continued occupation of alodial lands, exhibiting the use and conveniencies of a permanent possession, established the notion of it. They perceived, by comparison, the disadvantages of the lands under military service, which were revocable at the call of the donor. A year, therefore, and then the life of the vassal became the terms of the enjoyment of these gifts (1). They grew to be successive. The rights of the father were to be re-
spected, and his services to be remembered in his posterity. And, in this condition of them, the superior might choose, out of the family of the seigniory, the son the most valiant, and the most acceptable to him (2). The perpetuity of the grant was next to be understood. The prior readiness and capacity of the eldest son to do its duties, were to establish primogeniture and hereditary succession. And the firm connexion of the property in the descendants and blood of the proprietor, had produced an interest in the daughter, and, on the failure of male heirs, made the land inheritable to women.

During all this progress, the term benefice, and, during a part of it, the term fief, were to express these donations. Even after the grants of land had become hereditary, they were to continue to express them. These names, of consequence, have a reference to the same customs and the same institutions.

There are yet authors, who affirm that the benefice and the fief were different; and, when they only mean, that the benefice denoted the grant in its state of fluctuation, and the fief its condition of perpetuity, their distinction is frigid; for these were steps in the progression of the same law. But, in another aspect, their distinction is a mark of a more censurable inattention; for they ought to have known, that authentic monuments of history have repeated examples of the use of benefice and fief in expressing a gift of land under military service, and under a hereditary right (3).

There are writers more deceitful than these, who
are not afraid to contend, that the *benefice was alodiality*, or the land which was free and capable of alienation. The proofs, however, which evince the connexion between the words *benefice* and *sief* destroy this notion; and there are laws and records of the barbarians which make an actual distinction between the alodial and the beneficiary lands, which allude to the extensive condition of the former, and the unalienable state and the military service of the latter (4).

From the grant at discretion to the hereditary estate, benefices or siefs were to know the rites of homage and fealty. For the vassal, from the moment of his admission to the protection of the superior, was to make an acknowledgment of his submission and respect, and to give an assurance of his service and fidelity. He was also to be subject to the feudal incidents or casualties. For, from the earliest times of the feudal grants, the superior was to find it necessary to educate in his hall the expectants of his siefs, or his future vassals. To this care he was even to be led oftener, and with greater attention, when the sief was precarious, and for life, than when it was to pass down in succession; and the law, and not his choice, was to point out to him the infant heir. In every period of the advancement of the sief, the superior was to receive a present or relief on the grant of his land; he was to have a concern in the marriage of his vassal; he was to be assisted by his bounty or aid; and, on his delinquency, he was to revoke or take back the donation (5).
There are writers, notwithstanding, of distinguished penetration, and of extensive learning, who are confident and certain that these things were fruits of the perpetuity of the fief; and, I am sensible, that the tribe of lawyers, who copy one another from generation to generation, have embalmed this fancy in their systems (6). But it is altogether impossible, that the perpetuity of the fief could act in their creation. For, at the period it discovered itself, the feudal association had lost its cordiality. The superior and the vassal were in a state of hostility; and, in this situation, a train of rites and incidents could not possibly be created, which suppose protection and reverence, generosity and friendship. These rites and incidents were to distinguish those early and fortunate periods, when the interests of the superior and the vassal were the same, and their passions mutual; and, though they preserved their existence down to melancholy times, and were to act as causes of oppression, they had yet fostered the noblest principles of our nature. After throwing a luster on humain affairs in one condition of manners, they were to degrade them in another. They were to feel the influence of refinement and selfishness; and, in this last situation, the perpetuity of the fief, which these writers consider as their source, was to add a regularity to their appearance, and to encourage their severity.

From the conquests of the barbarians, till the ninth century, siefs were in their state of fluctuation. It was about the year 877 (7) that the per-
petuity of the fief was established in France. And it was known in every country of Europe in the commencement of the tenth century.

The tenure of knight-service was soon to follow the perpetuity of the fief, and was connected with it. There is, accordingly, an instance of a knight-fee in the year 880 (8). In the reign of Hugh Capet, who was raised to the throne in the year 987, this tenure extended itself over France; and, after having appeared in other nations of Europe, it was introduced into England. But, in this last country, there are peculiarities concerning the beginnings and the progress of fiefs, which have been the subject of fruitless inquiries and conjectures. I must not, therefore, pass them over in silence. If my principles are just, they ought to dissipate the darkness which covers a portion of our history so memorable and so important.

Many learned writers are positive, that the Anglo-Saxons were strangers to fiefs, and that these were introduced into England by William Duke of Normandy (9). There are writers not less learned, who affirm, that fiefs were not introduced into England by the Duke of Normandy, but prevailed among the Anglo-Saxons in the condition in which they were known under William (10). Great men range themselves on each side of the question, and I will not detract from their merits. But, it will be permitted to me to express my sentiments.

It cannot be true, that the Saxons, who settled in England, were strangers to fiefs. For, in this case, they must have renounced the manners to which they
had been accustomed in Germany. They must have yielded to views different from all the other Gothic tribes who made conquests. They must have adopted new and peculiar customs. And history has not remarked these deviations and this dissimilarity.

It cannot be true, that William the Norman introduced fiefs into England. The introduction of a system so repugnant to all the institutions which usually govern men; which was to force into an uncommon direction both government and property; which was to hold out new maxims in public and in private life; which was to affect, in a particular manner, inheritance and estates; to give a peculiar form to justice and courts; to change the royal palace, and the households of gentlemen; to overturn whatever was fixed and established in customs and usages; to innovate all the natural modes of thinking and of acting; could not possibly be the operation of one man, and of one reign.

Let us not be deceived by names and by authorities. Fiefs were to run the same career in England which they had experienced in the other countries of Europe. They were to be at pleasure and annual, for life, a series of years, and in perpetuity; and, in all these varieties, they were to be exhibited in the Anglo-Saxon period of our story. The hereditary grant, as well as the grant in its preceding fluctuations, was known to our Saxon ancestors. Of this, the conformity of manners which must necessarily have prevailed between the Saxons, and all the other conquering tribes of the barbarians, is a most powerful, and a satisfactory argument. Nor is it
single and unsupported. History and law come in aid
to analogy; and these things are proved by the
spirit and text of the Anglo-Saxons laws, and by
actual grants of hereditary estates under military
service (11).

It is, at the same time, not less true, that the state
of fiefs in England, under William the Norman,
differed most essentially from their condition among
the Anglo-Saxons. The writers, therefore, who con-
tend that they existed in the ages previous to Duke
William, in the same form in which they appeared
after his advancement to the crown, are mistaken.
For, under the Anglo-Saxon princes, no mention is
made of those feudal severities which were to shake
the throne under William and his successors. Yet
fiefs, under the Anglo-Saxons, in every step of
their progression, must have been connected with
those feudal incidents which were the sources of
these severities.

This difficulty, which, on a slight observation,
appears to be inexplicable, will yield to my prin-
ciples. The varying spirit of the feudal association,
which I have been careful to remark, accounts for
it in a manner the most easy and the most natural.
When the superior and the vassal were friends, and
their connexion was warm and generous, the feudal
incidents were acts of cordiality and affection. When
they were enemies, and their connexion was pre-
served, not by the commerce of the passions and the
heart, but merely by the tie of land, the feudal
incidents were acts of oppression and severity. During
the Anglo-Saxon times, the affectionate state of the
feudal association prevailed. During the times of Duke William, and his immediate successors, their hostile condition was experienced. Hence the mildness and happiness of our Saxon ancestors; hence the complaints and grievances of our Norman progenitors.

This solution of a difficulty, which has been a fruitful source of mistake, is strongly confirmed by a peculiarity which I am now to mention, and which, in its turn, is to lead to the explication of a problem that has been alike perplexing to our antiquaries and historians.

It was from Duke William, down to King John, that the people of England were to complain loudly of the feudal severities; and, during this long period of outrage and lamentation, it was their incessant desire, that the laws of Edward the Confessor should be restored. It is, therefore, beyond all doubt, that the feudal severities were not heard of during the times of King Edward. The superior and the vassal were then cordial and happy in each other. The feudal incidents were then expressions of generosity and attachment.

But Duke William, who was to acknowledge, by his laws, the freedom of the English government, which he was to insult by his administration, enacted, that the possessors of land should not be harassed with unjust exactions and tallages (12). He thus promised an alleviation of the feudal severities. And, what seems constantly to have attended this promise, he formally restored and confirmed the laws of the Confessor (13). In allusion to the same severities,
William Rufus engaged to abstain from illegal aids and oppressions; and in reference to the same customs of the Confessor, he became bound to govern by mild and sanctified laws (14). Henry I executed a celebrated charter, which contained direct mitigations of the feudal incidents, and he expressly restored and confirmed the laws of King Edward (15). Stephen gave a charter of liberties to the barons and people; and it was its purpose to bestow his sanction on the grant of Henry, and to confirm the good laws and customs of the Confessor (16). With the same intentions, a charter of liberties was framed and granted by Henry II. (17).

These grants, though invaluable as ample and decisive testimonials of our ancient liberties, by their perpetual and anxious retrospection to the Saxon times, could not be carried into execution, and maintained in the purity of their intentions. The altered condition of manners, and of the feudal association, did, not permit their exercise. Notwithstanding the high and independent spirit of the English nation, which occasioned these grants, the feudal severities were to continue. They prevailed under Duke William, under Rufus, under Henry I, under Stephen, and under Henry II. They were known under Richard I. And in the age of King John, they became so exorbitant and so wild, from the eccentric and thoughtless nature of this capricious and despicable prince, that the barons and the people confederated to vindicate their liberties, and produced the magna charta, which, while it offered a limitation of the feudal rigors, was to be de-
claratory of the constitutional freedom that had distinguished this fortunate island from the earliest times (18).

This constant connexion of the complaints of the feudal severities, and the revival of the laws and customs of the Confessor, from the age of Duke William to King John, is a most remarkable and important peculiarity. 'What these laws were, of Edward the Confessor,' says Mr. Hume, 'which the English, every reign, during a century and a half, desired so passionately to have restored, is much disputed by antiquarians; and our ignorance of them seems one of the greatest defects in the ancient English history (19).'

The train of thinking into which I have fallen, points, with an indubitable clearness, to the explanation of this mystery. By the laws or customs of the Confessor, that condition of felicity was expressed, which had been enjoyed during the Anglo-Saxon times, while the feudal incidents were expressions of generosity and friendship. These incidents, in the fortunate state of the feudal association, acting alike to public and private happiness, produced that equal and affectionate intercourse, of which the memory was to continue so long, and the revival to create such struggles. It was the cordiality, the equality, and the independence of this society and communication, which are figured by the laws or customs of the Confessor, and which made them the fond objects of such lauding admiration, and such ardent wishes (20).

But, while the times of Duke William and his
successors were discriminated from those of the Con-
fessor and the Anglo-Saxon princes, by the diffe-
rent states they displayed of the feudal association,
there is another circumstance in the progress of
fiefs, by which they were to be distinguished more
obviously.

Knight-service, which, in France, and in the
other kingdoms of Europe, was introduced in the
gentle gradation of manners, was about to be dis-
covered in England, after the same manner, when
the battle of Hastings facilitated the advancement of
William the Norman to the crown of the Confessor.
The situation of the Anglo-Saxons in an island,
and the Danish invasions, had obstructed their
refinement. In the memorable year 1066, when they
lost King Edward, and acquired Duke William,
they knew the perpetuity of the fief; but they were
altogether strangers to knight-service and a knight’s
fee. The duchy of Normandy, when granted to
Rollo by Charles the Simple, in the year 912, had
yet experienced all the vicissitudes of fiefs. And
William, being the sixth prince in the duchy,
was familiar with the most extended ideas of the
feudal system. These he brought with him into
England, and they were to govern and direct his
conduct.

The followers of Harold having forfeited their
estates, they reverted to the crown. An immense
number of lordships and manors being thus in the
disposal of William, he naturally gave them out
after the forms of Normandy. Each grant, whether
to a baron or a gentleman, was computed at fo
many fees, and each fee gave the service of a knight. To the old beneficiary tenants, he was to renew their grants under this tenure. By degrees, all the military lands of the kingdom were to submit to it. And, with a view, doubtless, to this extension, the book of Domesday was undertaken, which was to contain an exact state of all the landed property in the kingdom. Instead, therefore of bringing fiefs into England, this prince was only to introduce the last step of their progress, the invention of the knight's fee, or the tenure of knight-service.

In fact, it is to be seen by his laws, that he introduced knight-service, and not fiefs. Nor let it be fancied, that this improvement was made by his single authority and the power of the sword. His laws not only express its enactment in his reign, but mention that it was sanctioned with the consent of the common council of the nation. It was an act of parliament, and not the will of a despot, that gave it validity and establishment (21).

The measure, it is to be conceived, was even highly acceptable to all orders of men. For, a few only of the benefices of the Anglo-Saxon princes being in perpetuity, the greatest proportion of the beneficiary or feudal tenants must have enjoyed their lands during life, or to a series of heirs. Now, the advancement of such grants into hereditary fiefs, under knight-service, was an important advantage and acquisition. While it operated to the convenience and the grandeur of the sovereign, it bettered
the property, and secured the independence of the subject.

But, while it is to be thought, that knight-service was introduced into England in the times of Duke William, and extended over it to a considerable degree, it is not, I believe, to be found with certainty, how many fees or knight-services were created in his reign. Ordericus Vitalis has, indeed, affirmed, that William created sixty thousand knight-services or fees (22). But a very different state of this matter is given by Alexander, Archdeacon of Shrewsbury, a diligent officer of the exchequer, in the days of Richard I, King John, and Henry III. He mentions it as a tradition in his day, that, under Duke William, the number of fees in England amounted only to thirty-two thousand. Of this, however, he could find no proof in any record (23). The discrepancy between this report, and the testimony of Ordericus Vitalis, is so great, that no reliance is to be given to either of them. And, though Mr. Madox, Mr. Hume, Sir William Blackstone, and many writers, are disposed to adopt the relation of the latter, there seems not any convincing reason in its favor. For, independent of the tradition of the Archdeacon of Shrewsbury, which affects it so violently, it is observable, that the knight-fees must have been in a state of constant fluctuation under Duke William; and that, in the darkness of time, it is impossible to find out the number of the last fee which was granted by him. The fluctuation in the number of fees continued also under his immediate successors. For, it was not till about the
end of the reign of Henry II. that all the alodial property of England was converted into tenure (24). And, from the administration of William till this period, there must have been a gradual augmentation of the fees and the knights.

It may now be a speculation, neither incurious nor unuseful, to attend to fiefs in the state of their completion, and to remark the military power they established.
CHAPTER III.
Of the Military Power of a Feudal Kingdom.

SECTION I.
An Idea of the Feudal Militia.

WHEN the feudal association was cordial, there existed no necessity for the knight's fee. The vassals of a chief gave with pleasure their assistance. When this association was discordant, different interests actuating the superior and the vassal, art and policy were to prescribe the exact service to be performed. Nothing was to be left to friendship and cordiality. A rule, certain and definite, pointed out the duties of the vassal. This rule was the tenure of knight-service.

A duchy, barony, or earldom, were the estates possessed by the nobles; and, being divided into fees, each of these was to supply its knight. A tenant of the crown, who was not created into nobility, but enjoyed a grant of land, furnished also his knights in proportion to his fees. The nobles and the gentry of a feudal kingdom were thus its defenders and guardians. And they granted out territory to persons inferior to them in the divisions of fees, and under the burden of knights. In proportion, therefore, to the extent of its lands, there was, in every feudal state, an army, or a body of militia, for its support and protection.
But, while a force, numerous and sufficient, was, in this manner, created, a care was also bestowed to hold it in readiness to take the field. The knights, who were to appear in proportion to the fees of each estate, were bound to assemble at a call, in complete armor, and in a state for action (1). The feudal militia, of consequence, could be marched, with expedition, to defend the rights of its nation, to support its honor, or to spread its renown.

The usual arms of a knight were the shield and helmet, the coat of mail, the sword, or the lance (2). It was also his duty to have a horse. For, a growing luxury, and the passion for show, encouraged by tournaments, had brought discredit to the infantry, which had distinguished the barbarians in their original feats, and facilitated their victories over the Romans (3). The horsemen were called the battle, and the success of every engagement was supposed to depend upon them. No proprietor of a fee, no tenant by knight-service, fought on foot. The infantry consisted of men, furnished by the villages and the towns in the dependances of the prince or the nobles. The bow and the sling were the arms of these; and though, at first, of little consideration, they were to grow more formidable (4).

During the warmth of the feudal association, the military service of the vassal was every moment in the command of the superior. When their association was decayed, it was not to be depended on, and, when afforded, was without zeal, and without advantage. The invention of knight-service, which
was to recover, in some degree, the vigor of this connexion, while it ascertained the exact duty to be rendered, was to fix its duration. Each possessor of a fee was, at his own expense, to keep himself in the field during forty days (5). To this obligation, the great vassals of the crown were bound, and inferior proprietors were to submit to it. When a single battle was commonly to decide the fates and the disputes of nations, this portion of time was considerable and important. And, if any expediency demanded a longer duty, the prince might retain his troops, but under the condition of giving them pay for their extraordinary service (6).

Such was the military system which, during a long period of time, was to uphold the power of the monarchies of Europe; a system, of which it was the admirable consequence, that those who were the proprietors of the land of a kingdom, were to defend it. They were the most interested in its welfare and tranquillity; and, while they were naturally disposed to act with union and firmness, against a foreign enemy, they were induced not less strongly to guard against domestic tyranny. Their interest and happiness; their pleasure and convenience, urged them equally to oppose invasions from abroad, intestine commotions, and the stretch of prerogative. A strength, so natural, and which could never be exhausted; a strength, in which the prince was to have less authority than the nobles, and in which the power of both was checked by the numerous classes of inferior proprietors; a strength, which had directly in view the preservation of civil liberty,
seems, on a slight observation, the perfection of military discipline. But, with all its appearance of advantage, this scheme of an army was incompatible with refining manners; and, in pointing out the causes of its weakness, we may see the symptoms of refinement they are to exhibit. A double curiosity is thus to confute its charms the anxiety of inquiries that are irksome.

SECTION II.


THE portion of land termed a fee, which was the foundation of knight-service, and on which there rose the mighty fabric of the feudal strength, was no sooner invented than it was to suffer. In the frittering down of feudal property by infeudations, the practice prevailed of dividing even a fee. Thus, there were some vassals who possessed the half of a knight's fee. There were others, who had the third, the fourth, or the fifth parts of a fee. Fractions of a fee, even to the thirtieth and the fortieth
parts; were not uncommon (1). These particulars, so perplexing to the historians of modern times, seem inconsistent with the views of knight-service, and require to be explained.

A fee could properly be divided into eight portions, and these were said to be its members. They received this appellation, because their proprietors were bound to perform the military service, or the original purpose of the grant. All divisions beyond these portions were improper; and their possessors, not being members of the fee, were to perform no service. The question still recurs, how the members of the fee; or the proprietors of the eight portions, were to perform the service of a knight? After the invention of knight-service, the usual term that the militia were to remain in the field was forty days. The eighth part of a fee, by this rule, gave a title to the eighth part of the service of a knight. Its proprietor, of consequence, took the field for five days, which was his proportion of the stipulated service of the fee for forty days. The possessor of the half of a knight’s fee was thus to give his attendance for twenty days: And, in this manner, the other members of the fee were to act (2).

The members of the fee had each the privileges of a manor, that is, jurisdiction, court, and usage. Hence the multiplication, of old, of little manors. The proprietors of fractions, who were not members of the fee, had not the privileges of manors, but paid suit and attendance at the courts of the county or canton. The former were included in the system of feefs; the latter were thrown out of it,
and their number was equally promoted by the anxious fondness of a father, who would provide for all his children, and by the ruinous prodigality of a spendthrift, who would relieve his necessities.

The fractions which were members of the fee, were to be a shock to the feudal militia, by disposing to different persons, the service which a single individual could perform with greater skill and address. They were to be a source of weaknesses and disorder. The fractions which were not members of the fee, were to hasten the period of the alienation of property.

Amidst the wants created by society and intercourse, by ambition and pleasure, the vassal, who held from the crown many fees under knight-service, found it necessary, at times, to obtain from his prince the licence to let out a portion of them under a farm-rent, and not subject to military service, nor to homage, wardship, relief, and the other feudal incidents (3). The land he retained was sufficient to produce the number of knights which were required from him. No immediate prejudice was supposed to be done to the power of the sovereign, or to the militia. And thus, entire fees, and great proportions of territory, were to escape out of the magic circle of feudality. They were to pass from chivalry and tenure, to be subject to profits or pretations by the year. Licences from vassals to their feudatories, created also these conversions of fees into property. As deviations from a system, they mark its decline; as attentions to
property, they express the propensity to refinement and commercial manners.

Leases, in this form, were even to be made without the knowledge of superiors. The interest of the vassal in the estate, so much greater and more intimate than that of the lord, was to carry him still farther. Retaining a sufficiency of land for the knights he was to furnish, he was to venture on the sale of particular fees. Encroachments made with this precaution, were to lead to encroachments more extravagant. Sales were to take place, without the reservation of a property equal to the military service to be performed by the vender. The attention of the lord was thus called forcibly to the acts of his vassal. Consulting his interest and importance, he would permit of no sales that had not the sanction of his consent. The usages and doctrines of fiefs were in his favor. It was expedient for the necessitous vassal to act with his approbation. A bribe came to soften the severity of the lord. The fine of alienation was established. On the payment of this fine, the vassal might sell and barter, not only a portion of his fees, but the whole of them (4).

These peculiarities had power of themselves to destroy the feudal militia. But other causes were to concur with them. Men of rank and fortune were to yield to an increasing luxury. The love of ease made them wish an exemption from service, and their pride produced a dislike to the mandate of a superior. The substitution of persons to perform their duties, of which the idea was first suggested by the sickness of vassals, and then familiar from

H 4
the grants of fees to ecclesiastics, and their devotion to women, became a flattering expedient to the rich and the luxurious (5). The prince could not depend on the personal attendance of the nobles and the tenants in capite. Persons, hired with a price or a pension, were often to discharge their offices, and to disgust troops, who were to submit reluctantly to their command.

Substitutions of this sort, however, though they came to be very common, were a matter of delicacy and attention. For the condition of society in the feudal ages permitted not, at all times, the wealthy and the noble to delegate the authority over their vassals. But, when in a situation so critical, they were not without resources.

It had been usual, from the earliest times, for the superior to levy a fine from the military tenant who refused to take the field at his summons (6). This suggested, very naturally, the commutation of service for money. A new method of tenure was thus to arise. The vassal by knight-service might convert his holding into the tenure of escuage, which, instead of exacting knights for the fees of his estate, required him to make payments to the exchequer of his prince (7).

While this aversion from service was to prevail, troops were yet to be necessary. The fine, accordingly, which the sovereign demanded from the vassal who neglected to perform his duty, the payments he received by agreement from the tenants by escuage, and his interest to supply the attendance
of both, were to produce, in every country of Europe, a multitude of stipendiaries.

These forces were a mixture of all nations, and consisted of men, whom poverty and debauchery had corrupted into wretchedness. They had no solicitude what cause they were to defend; and their convenient swords obeyed, at all times, the donatives of princes. They were called coterelli, from the hangers they wore, ruptarii, from the pay they received, and many of them being of the country of Brabant, the term Brabançons, or Brabantini, came to express them (8).

The introduction of these banditti into a feudal army, was the utmost violence to its nature. It offended infinitely the barons and the military tenants, that they should be called to mingle with persons so ignoble. Yet, the princes of Europe, finding the advantages of troops whom they could command to their purposes, and march at their will, were disposed to encourage them. They perceived, that they could possess no power without mercenaries; and no mercenaries were to be had without money. Hence the passion for wealth they were to discover; hence their ruinous projects to acquire it.

But, while the struggles for money, thus created, were to produce consequences distant and important, they served to destroy altogether the purposes of knight-service. They gave a mortal stab to the feudal militia. The feudal association was to be foul with disgusts, oppressions, and disorders. Time, and the devices of art, augmented the general confusion,
The barons and tenants in capite by knight-service, when summoned to take arms, were often to dispute the number of their fees, and the knights they should furnish. The tenants by escuage made proffers of the half or the third of the payments to which they were bound. The constables and the marshals of armies were ill qualified to decide concerning matters, so delicate in their own nature, and in which an impropriety of conduct might be a prejudice to their sovereigns. Doubts were to arise, not only about the fees or the knights of estates, but about the tenure by which they were held (9). The clergy were to invent, and to encourage frauds. They taught the laity to convey to them their feudal possessions, and to receive them back as property. The fees in their own enjoyment they affected to hold in frankalmoigne, or by a tenure that gave no service but prayers (10). The subdivisions of knight-fees created perplexities that were intricate in no common degree. Fines or payments were often to be demanded, not only for the fractions which were members of the fee, but for fractions which were not members (11). The consultation of rolls and records, inquisitions by jurors, and the examination of witnesses or evidence, required a length of time, and a trial of patience, and were not to be always satisfactory. The sovereign, in the mean time, was in haste to march against an enemy. And he felt his weakness in the diminished ranks of his army, in the abstractions of his revenue, in the turbulent service of the great vassals who obeyed his summons, in the coldness of those who
acted as substitutes, in the total want of discipline and of military knowledge in inferior orders, and in the limited time which the troops were to remain in the field.

To all these causes, the rise of commerce is to be added. Its various pursuits, and its endless occupations, were to actuate the middle, and the lowest classes of men, and to give the killing blow to a system, of which the ruins and decline have an interest and importance that bring back to the memory its magnificence and grandeur.
The Fall of Chivalry as a Military Establishment.
The Knights of Honor lose their Consideration.
Their Numbers and Venality. Wealth becomes a
more solid Title to Knighthood than personal Merit.
This Dignity is connected with the Possession of a
Fee. It ceases to be Honorable, and is made a
Subject of Compulsion. Fines for the Exemption
from Knighthood. The ancient Chivalry disappears
on the Rise of Regular Armies.

All the splendor and advantages of the ancient
chivalry could not uphold the feudal militia. The
dubbed knight, or the knight of honor, was to fall
with the mere military tenant, or the knight of
tenure. Chivalry was to decay as well as knight-
service. When they ceased to give a mutual aid and
support, they were soon to operate in a contrary
direction, and to promote the decline of each other.

In the order of dubbed knights, there were nece-
sarily a multitude of warriors, whose military renown
had chiefly entitled them to the investiture of arms,
and whose accomplishments were greater than their
fortunes. Their knowledge in war, and the rank
to which they were advanced by the ceremonial of
knighthood, gave them the capacity of acting in
all stations. Their poverty, splendid, but incon-
venient, made them attach themselves, in a more
particular manner, to princes and nobles (1). From these they received pensions, and, in the households of these, they enjoyed and sustained honors and offices. Men of rank were to vie with one another in their numbers and attachment. They became a part of the garniture, the magnificence, and the pride of nobility (2).

There were thus, in the declension of the feudal army, a society of men, who could supply the personal service and attendance of the luxurious and the great. A substitution of knights, in the place of the barons and vassals of the crown, was thence to prevail very generally. And, while knights were, in this manner, to wound deeply the military discipline and arrangements, they were to throw a contempt on knighthood by their numbers and venality. The change of manners, and the uses of wealth, had tarnished the luster and the glories of the ancient chivalry.

In the state of its degradation, the long and hard apprenticeship to arms which, of old, had prepared the candidate for the struggles and the cares of knighthood, was forgotten. The possession of a portion of land was to be sufficient to give a title to this dignity. It was annexed to a knight's fee. The unaccomplished proprietor of a few acres was to be adorned with the sword, and to be admitted to the ceremonies of knighthood. But he could not hold its honors. They had passed away for ever. The order, which had ennobled kings, and greatness, supreme power, and the loftiest acquirements, grew to be mean and trivial.
The aspiring and the meritorious who, of old, courted and expected knighthood, with the most passionate ardor and the fondest hope, were now to avoid it with anxiety, and to receive it with disgust. An unhappy exertion of prerogative was to add to its humiliation. Princes, to uphold their armies, were to issue frequent proclamations, which required all the military tenants of the crown to appear before them on a certain day, and to be girt with the belt of knighthood (3). Having ceased to be an object of choice, it was to be made a subject of compulsion. A single knight’s fee held of the crown, being deemed an ample enough fortune to entitle to knighthood, its possessor, if unwilling to accept this dignity, was compelled to receive it (4). Senility, irrecoverable weakness, and loss of limbs, were the only excuses to be admitted for his refusal. If he had not these reasons to plead, and neglected to take the honor of knighthood, his estate was distrained by the officers of the revenue (5). Men were to buy, as a privilege, a reprieve and an exemption from knighthood; and princes, when they could not recover their armies, were to fill their exchequers (6).

In a condition, not merely of meanness, but of disgrace and calamity, the ancient chivalry could not exist long. It was worn out to extremity; and the military and regular establishments to which the defects of the feudal arrangements pointed so strongly, were to supersede its uses and advantages. It did not die, as so many writers have fancied, of the ridicule of Cervantes, but of old age, despondence, and debility.
CHAPTER V.

The Military Arrangements which prevailed in the Declension of Fiefs and Chivalry. The Introduction of standing Armies.

SECTION I.

Of Mercenaries. The Evils which result from them; The Rise of Taxations.

The mercenaries, which were made necessary by the disorders of fiefs and chivalry, were to lead to misfortune and misery. They were scarcely known, when the princes of Europe invented the art of extorting the wealth of their subjects, and of employing it to oppress them. While the lands dealt out by the crown created an effectual army, soldiers gave their service for their possession. But, when the inconveniences and the defects of this system had produced mercenaries, the prince had no possession to bestow. His domains had gone away from him in prodigalities and donations. It was yet incumbent on him to maintain his troops. Money was absolutely indispensable to him, and he was to find out measures to procure it. These measures are interesting in themselves, and still more so in their consequences. They gave rise to taxations in Europe.

The vassals of the crown by knight-service were obliged to personal attendance in wars; but, con-
fidering it as a burden, were disposed to compound for it. This was also the case with the inferior tenants. They were no less inclined to contribute their proportions to their lords, than these were to satisfy their prince. To the prince, the money of his vassals was of more advantage than their service; but agreements with each were fatiguing and endless; and his mercenaries were clamorous and impatient.

An expedient presented itself, which, to all parties, gave the promise of ease and satisfaction. The prince, instead of the service that was due, and, instead of contracting with every tenant who held from him, assessed a moderate sum on every knight’s fee throughout the kingdom (1). It was just that his tenants should give a fine for their attendance, and what they furnished was to go to his mercenaries.

The prerogative thus begun, was pregnant with misfortunes to subjects, and with advantages to princes, which were foreseen neither by the former, nor the latter. What, at first, was a matter of expediency, and an expression of the confidence of the people, and of the discretion of the sovereign, grew into a most formidable taxation (2). It was to be exerted with no moderation or decency. In the delirium of their greatness, the princes of Europe were to fancy, that, in extracting money from their subjects, they ought to know no rule but their ambition, their wants, and their caprice.

In a conformity with the assessment on the estates subject to knight-service, a tax was to be demanded from the possessors of land held in frankalmoigne and in soccage (3). And I have already observed, that
that the tenants by escuage paid a stipulated fine for their fees. All the territory of a kingdom was thus to contribute to the necessities of princes, and the greatest proportion of it was to be actually exposed to their ravages.

Their rapacity was not yet to be satisfied. The cravings of ambition, and the prodigalities of mercenaries, demanded something more. During the fortunate times of the feudal association, it had been common for the inhabitants of the cities and towns within the demesnes of the sovereign, and within those of the nobility, to express, respectively, by presents, their submission, satisfaction, and gratitude. In more unhappy times, these gifts, these fruits of generosity, were demanded as a right. These presents, the expressions of happiness, grew into tallages and exactions, and were to denote misery and wretchedness. The prince with an unblushing audacity, levied grants at his will from his cities and towns; and his example was followed by the nobles within the cities and towns within their territories. Hence the most destructive and the most calamitous of all the oppressions of the middle times (4).

Measures, so hostile to the free spirit of the Gothic governments, infringements of property so audacious, were everywhere to excite and to inflame the passions of the people. The princes of Europe were to contend for power, and their subjects for liberty. Struggles, the most critical and the most serious, were sustained; and the progress of these, and the respective success of the parties in
the different kingdoms of Europe, were to alter its governments to the forms they maintain at this hour.

In France, and in other countries, the command of the mercenaries, and the power of taxation, were finally to prevail. In England, the frantic weaknsses of King John, and the union of the nobles and the people, were to renovate the Gothic liberty, and to set limits to princes. While, in States less fortunate, the kingly authority was to grow into despotism, and to debase the genius of men, while taxes, and tallages, and exactions, were to be demanded in wantonness and caprice, and a cruel tyranny to diffuse oppression and grievance, the *magna charta* was to command, that no prince of England should presume to levy any tax, tallage, or exaction, without the consent of the parliament (5); and that, while the land of the kingdom was to be free from his rapaciousness, he should not dare to harass its cities or towns, but that they should return to the possession and enjoyment of their ancient liberties (6).

The disorders of the feudal militia produced mercenaries, and the use of mercenaries gave birth to taxations. Taxations were begun to be levied, in all the States of Europe, at the will of the prince. This occasioned contentions between sovereigns and their subjects. The victory of the kingly authority over the liberty of the people, continued in many princes the power of taxation; and this power, and the command of mercenaries, are the completion of despotism. In England, the prerogative of taxation which the prince had assumed, was wrested
from him by the great charter of liberties. He was to command his mercenaries; but he was to depend for their support and their pay on the generosity of his people.

SECTION II.

The Difference between a Mercenary Soldier and a Feudal Vassal. Sovereigns find Troops by entering into Contracts with their Nobility, and with Captains by Profession. Volunteers make an Offer of their Service. Commissions of Array. The Disadvantages of these Military Schemes. The Idea and Establishment of a Standing Force. France, and other Nations, lose their Liberties. The Opposition to a Standing Force in England. The total Abolition of Fiefs. The consequent Necessity of a Standing Army. The Precautions and Anxiety with which it is introduced.

The Coterelli, or banditti who wandered over Europe, and offered their swords to the highest bidder, introduced the idea that war might be considered as a trade. The feudal proprietor fought for his land and his nation, and the prince had no title to demand his service in any dispute of his own. He drew his sword for the safety of the state, or for its honor; but he was not bound to support the quarrels of his sovereign. When the feudal prince contended with a great subject, the feudal vassals of the kingdom did not move indiscriminately to his call. His defenders, in this situation,
were his particular vassals, or the tenants of his demesne. In like manner, if he declared war against a foreign state, without the consent of the great council of the nation, the majority of the feudal vassals might refuse to obey his mandate. It was only in the wars, and in the quarrels approved by the nation, that they attended to his summons (1). But, when arms became a profession, the soldier stipulated his service for his pay. He consulted not for what end he was to fight. An implicit obedience was required from him; and his sword, though it might be employed against a natural and an active enemy, might also be turned against his native country, and give a stab to its repose and prosperity.

When, from the refuse or the vagabonds of Europe, the taking money for service was become familiar, the making war a traffic prevailed in every state. The idle and the profligate found a way of life, which flattered their indolence and rapacity. The usual method of collecting an army, was now by contracts with nobles, who had authority over the loose and disorderly inhabitants of their estates; with captains, whose address or valor could allure adventurers to their standards; and with individuals, whose poverty or choice made them offer themselves to the constables and the marshals of princes. These troops, though more obedient than the Gothic militia, were not much superior to them in discipline. For, at the end of every war, the prince, on whom they depended for pay, was in haste to disband them (2).

But, while this grew to be the usual method of
raising an army, it was a law in the different nations of Europe, that all the subjects of a kingdom were bound to take arms in cases of necessity. Statutes, accordingly, or ordinances, ascertained the armor with which every person, in proportion to his riches and rank, was to provide himself, and which he was to keep constantly in his possession (3). And thus, when dangers threatened, and sudden invasions took place, commissions of array were issued by princes, and supplies to the army called out from the provinces and counties, the villages and cities (4). The soldiers, levied in this manner, received also the pay of the prince.

These schemes for a military power were still imperfect. The oppression of arrays was disgusting and cruel in the highest degree; and the troops they furnished were ill disposed to exert themselves, and without discipline. Mercenaries were the strength of armies; but, to collect such multitudes of them as were requisite for great and vigorous efforts, required an inexhaustible revenue. They had, besides, no principle of attachment or of honor. An object of terror to the people, and of suspicion to the prince, they were employed and detested; and when the termination of a war set them loose, the condition of Europe was deformed, and the greatest disorders were perpetrated. They had no certain homes, and no regular plan of subsistence. They were at the command of the turbulent and factious; they associated into bands and companies, and were often so formidable as to maintain themselves, for a time, in opposition to the civil authority.
Robberies, murders, the ravishment of women, and other atrocious crimes, were frequent (5). The contagiousness of their example, and the enormities they produced, seemed incompatible with the existence of society; yet their use and their dismission were necessarily, in a great measure, to create this contagiousness and these enormities.

Confusions often lead to improvement, by demanding and pointing out a remedy. It was perceived, that the soldiery ought to be maintained or kept up, not only in times of war, but of peace. They would thus be preserved from marauding, and plunder, and riot, and, improving in discipline, they would act with greater firmness and efficacy.

The creation of a standing force, of which the idea was thus unfolded, was also facilitated by the rivalship which had prevailed between France and England. From the time that William Duke of Normandy had mounted the throne of England, the two kingdoms entertained a jealousy of one another. The dominions which the English were to possess on the continent, being a source of consideration to them there, became the foundation of difficulties and animosities, which were ready to break out on occasions the most trifling. Frequent wars putting to trial the strength and resources of the rival states, served to improve them in arts and in arms. Even the victories of Edward III. and Henry V. while they brought so much strength and glory to England, were to be lessons of instruction to the other states of Europe, by discovering the danger which must result to all of them from the encroach-
ments of a power so mighty and so ambitious. The
battles of Cressy, Poictiers, and Azincourt, which
seemed to bring nothing but honor and advantage
to the English, were the prognostics of their humi-
liation. And, while France was apparently in a state
of desperation, it was to recover its importance and
grandeur. The maid of Orleans was to astonish with
the wildness of her heroism; Charles VII. was to
exert his political sagacity; Dunois, his military
skill. The domestic discords of France were to cease;
and the Duke of Burgundy, perceiving the perni-
cious consequences of uniting France to England,
was to throw off his unnatural connexions with the
latter, and to sacrifice his animosities to policy. In
a word, the foreign dominions of the English
were to be ravished from them. And Charles VII,
instructed by the past; and apprehensive of future
invasions and calamities, was to guard against them
by the wisdom and the stability of his precautions.

Thus, the decay of the feudal system, the disor-
ders of the mercenaries, and the political condition
of France with regard to England, all conspired to
illustrate the necessity of a standing force.

Having deliberated maturely on the step he was
to take, Charles VII. in the year 1445, selecting out
of his forces a body of cavalry, to the number of
nine thousand, formed them into fifteen regular
and standing companies, under officers of expe-
rience. Three years after, encouraged by his suc-
cess, he established a standing infantry of Frank
archers, to the number of sixteen thousand (6).
The nobility, who had been long tired and dif-
gusted with the fatigues and the returns of military service, to which their tenures subjected them, and the people, who hoped, under disciplined troops, to be free from the insults and oppressions which they had known under the mercenaries, opposed not these establishments. They were struck with the advantages to be derived from them, but discerned not their dangerous and fatal tendency. No constitutional limitations were made; no bulwarks were raised up for the security of the national independence and liberties. Succeeding princes were to add to, and improve on the regulations of Charles; and from this period, the monarchs of France were to be in the full capacity of levying taxes at their pleasure, and of surveying, in mockery, the rights and pretensions of their subjects.

But, while France and other states of Europe, in consequence of these general reasons, and from the idea of their own interest, and the upholding a balance of power, were to be induced to admit of standing armies, and were thence to lose their liberties, the same causes did not operate the same effects in England. The introduction of a standing army was, indeed, to be made effectual there; but at a very distant period, and on principles the most consistent with liberty. The advantages to accrue from it did not escape observation; but its dangers were still seen in the strongest light; and its establishment was opposed, till the very moment when its necessity was absolute and uncontrollable.

Till the reign of Charles II. the feudal militia, and the troops furnished by contract with nobles
and captains, and by the enlisting of volunteers, continued to constitute the usual military power of England. Till the same aera, also, commissions of array were issued by princes to procure forces on extraordinary occasions. And, the termination of every war was regularly followed with the disbandment of the army.

Of these institutions, the inconveniencies, as I have said, were infinite and enormous. They were preferable, however, to a standing army, with despotism. For regulations and policy might, in some degree, supply and alleviate their defects and abuses. The disorders, indeed, of the feudal militia, had risen to a height, which, considering the growing refinement of the nation, admitted not of any remedy. They were to endure, of consequence, till the extinction of tenures. But wholesome rules and enactments might depress or diminish the confusions and the oppressions which were the natural results of the use and dismission of mercenaries; and these were not wanting (7). It was likewise possible to give a check to the violence of princes in the issuing of commissions of array; and the spirit of the constitution, and express laws, made it fully understood, that they ought to be undertaken and executed with the greatest respect for the freedom of the subject, and in cases only of urgent danger and apparent necessity (8).

The reduction of the power of taxation assumed by princes, and the declaration of magna charta, that the people were to grant the supplies which they thought necessary to government, had fostered
the passion for independence. The constant appeals of the people to charters declaratory of their ancient freedom and privileges, and corrective of abuses, that time and the maxims of tyranny had produced, gave them an evident superiority which they might exert in all political contentions. It was easy to discover when the sovereign was disposed to encroach; and the power the commons could oppose to him was decisive. To refuse him money, was to disarm him. Of himself, he could maintain no formidable army; and the people were not to lavish to him their wealth, that he might oppress them.

The schools of law, which were opened by learned men immediately after the settlement of the charters of liberty, were to diffuse widely the fundamental and free principles of the constitution (9). The discussion of political topics was to employ even the lowest ranks of the citizens, and to engender a turbulence, which, with all its ills, must be allowed to be respectable.

The awe over parliamentary debate, which Richard II. effected by the body of four thousand archers, which he attempted to keep up, and the insolence and disorders of this band, awakened, to an uncommon degree, the public jealousy, and evinced, with decision, the dangers of a standing force (10). The miserable state of France, under the military despotism which Charles VII. had begun, and which Louis XI. had accomplished, was to display, in all its terrors, that mode of administration which allows to the prince the command of the taxes and the army (11).
The English, astonished at the tyranny and pride of kings in other nations, were to repress them in their own. The spirit of opposition to the crown, natural to the government, and brought into exertion by the oppressive views, and the encroaching domination of princes, unfolded all their powers to the commons. During a long series of years, no standing army was permitted. It was held in the utmost detestation; and its existence was even deemed incompatible with the liberty of the subject.

In the wars between the houses of York and Lancaster, armies were frequently raised; but no standing establishment was thought of. The measure was both impolitic and violent, while the leaders of different factions were courting popularity. In the moment of peace, the soldier was lost in the citizen; and the army that conducted its commander to the throne, did not remain with him an instrument of his tyranny. It left him to the enjoyment of the legal rights of sovereignty, and was not to subvert the government. The struggle was not for a tyrant, but a king. The constitution was respected during scenes of violence and hostility, and the people felt a rising importance amidst slaughter and blood.

Henry VII. who united, in his person, the rights of the rival families, was permitted to constitute the yeomen of the guard. But these were only for the protection of the person of the sovereign, and were not to increase to an army. They were to be a state or ornament to the crown, not a terror to the subject. The obstinacy of Charles I. and the civil
wars to which it gave rise, were to confirm the ancient constitution, and to demonstrate, that neither the military power, nor the power of taxation, were prerogatives of the prince. Years and disorders were to render more solid the fabric of our government.

Yet, after the restoration of Charles II. had taken place, an event of great importance in our history, was to call, in a particular manner, for the standing force, from which the nation was so averse. The system of tenures, so decayed and so unsuitable to refining times, hastened to extinction. Early in this reign, a statute of infinite utility, gave a mortal blow to military tenures (12). The system of fiefs, so beneficial in one period, and so destructive in another, was overturned. The feudal strength, or militia of England, after languishing for ages in disease and weakness, received the wound of which it perished. In its place a standing army was expedient, and could alone correspond with the majesty of the people and the dignity of the crown.

The invention of cannon and fire-arms had changed the art of war. Movements, evolutions, and exercises, were not to be acquired to perfection by any militia, or even by mercenaries, who were hired for a season, and dismissed at the close of a campaign. Other nations were possessed of standing armies, and of these the force was not to be opposed by troops less regular and less disciplined. Self-preservation, and the necessity of attending to the balance of power in Europe, pointed irresistibly to this establishment. Its dangers, notwithstanding, were great, and might be fatal to the prince who should attempt it.
Invited, or rather compelled, by considerations the most powerful, Charles made the experiment. He ventured to maintain, by his private authority, a standing force of five thousand soldiery, for guards and garrisons. The jealous spirit of the people was alarmed. A measure so unconstitutional, excited fears and apprehensions, which behoved to be consulted. Yet James II. did not scruple to augment the standing force to thirty thousand men, whom he supported from his own civil lift. The nation was on the brink of a precipice. The revolution approached. The bill of rights declared, that the sovereign was not to raise or uphold a standing force in times of peace, without the consent of the parliament. And the matured experience of succeeding times, employed itself to devise the policy which was to make our army regular and formidable, with the least possible inconvenience to liberty.

A standing body of troops, as absolutely necessary, is kept up under the command of the crown, but by the authority of the legislature. The power of an act of parliament gives every year its continuance to our army; and any branch of the legislature may annually put a period to its existence, by objecting to it. The dangers of a standing force are thus prevented; its advantages are secured; and the soldiery, not living in camps, but intermingled with the people, are taught, while they respect the crown, to feel for the interests and prosperity of the nation. With these flow degrees, and with these symptoms of jealousy, did a standing army become a part of our constitution.
CHAPTER VI.

Of Manners and Refinement. The dissolute Conduct of the Women amidst the Decline and Oppressions of Fiefs. The general Corruption which invades Society.

While the varying situation of fiefs and chivalry was to produce the most important consequences in polity and government, it was to be no less powerful in changing the general picture of society; and the manners, which were to figure in their state of confusion and disorder, are a contrast to those which attended their elevation and greatness. The romantic grandeur and virtue which grew out of the feudal association, in its age of cordiality and happiness, could not exist when that cordiality and happiness were decayed. The disorders of fiefs had operated on chivalry; and the deviations of both from perfection, affecting strongly the commerce of life and the condition of the female sex, were to terminate in new modes of thinking, and new systems of action.

The disastrous state of fiefs, disuniting the interests of the lord and the vassal, gave rise to oppressions and grievances. These produced a proneness to venality and corruption. All ranks of men, from the sovereign to the slave, seemed at variance. Rapacity and insolence were to characterize the superior and the master; chicane and dissimulation, the vassal and the servant. A relaxation of morals,
total and violent, was to prevail. Chivalry, losing its renown, the purity of the knightly virtues was to be tarnished. When it fell as a military establishment, its generous manners were not to remain in vigor. The women were to lose their value and their pride. The propensity to vice, fostered by political disorder, and the passion for gallantry, driven to extremity by the romantic admiration which had been paid to the sex, were to engender a voluptuousness, and a luxury which, in the circle of human affairs, are usually to distinguish and to hasten the decline and the fall of nations.

Manners, too stately and pure for humanity, are not to flourish long. In the ruined states of fiefs and chivalry, there prevailed not, in the one sex, the scrupulous honor, the punctilious behavior, and the distant adoration of beauty, which had illustrated the aera of their greatness; nor, in the other, were there to be remarked, the cold and unconquerable chastity, the majestic air and the ceremonious dignity which had lifted them above nature. A gallantry, less magnificent, and more tender, took place. The fastidiousness and delicacies of former ages wore away. The women ceased to be idols of worship, and became objects of love. In an unreserved intercourse, their attractions were more alluring. The times, prone to corruption were not to resist their vicacity, their graces, their passion to please. Love seemed to become the sole business of life. The ingenious and the sentimental found a lasting interest and a bewitching occupation in the affiduities, the anxieties,
and the tenderness of intrigue. The coarse and intemperate, indulging their indolence and appetite, fought the haunts, and threw themselves into the arms of prostituted beauty.

The talents which, of old, recorded the deeds of valor, and the achievements of war; were now devoted to the fair (1). In every country of Europe, the poet, or the Troubadour, was to consecrate to them his homage and his songs (2). And, to the fashions of gallantry, the rise of literature is to be ascribed. Men of genius, and men who fancied they possessed it, flocked to the courts of princes, and to the palaces of the nobles; and the praise, which they knew how to lavish, got them attention and patronage. To make verses was the road to preferment. No lady was without her poet. Nor was poetry the exercise only of those who wished to better their fortunes. While it was to give riches and respect to the obscure, by the connexions it was to gain to them, it was to be an ornament and an honor to the great. Princes and barons, as well as knights and gentlemen, found it the surest recommendation to their mistresses (3). They sung their charms, their disdain, and their rigors. Even the artificial tenderness of the poet often grew into reality; and the fair one, who, at first, only listened to praise, was to yield to passion. The adulation paid to beauty, disposed it to approve; complaints led to pity; pity to love. The enchantment of perpetual flatteries, of prostrations respectful and passionate, of vows repeated with ardor, of sighs ever meant to allure, corrupted
a sex, of which the sensibilities are so exquisite. The rite of marriage, formerly so sanctimonious, was only courted to be abused (4). The pride of condition, more powerful than modesty, was, indeed, a check to the virgin; but she was to wait reluctantly the moment, when her coyness and timidity, instead of rebuking the passions, were to be a zest to them. All the fopperies of fancy were exhibited, all the labyrinths of love were explored. A licentiousness, which knew no restraint from principle, was rendered more seducing by the decorsums and decorations of a fantastic gallantry (5).

Religion, which must ever mix in human affairs, is oftener to debase than to enlighten. It is, for the most part, a mass of superstitions, which encourage the weaknesses of mankind. This was the case with Christianty in the darkness of the middle times. The votaries of beauty did not scruple to address the Deity to soften its obstinacy. In the heat of intrigue they invoked the Trinity and the saints for success (6). Religion was employed to give a poignancy to the disorders of prostitution and lust. The rich were to have houses of debauch in the form of monasteries, consisting of many cells or apartments, and under the government of abbesses (7). The profaneness of gallantry disturbed and deformed even the meditations of the most pious. The devotee was to seek a mistress in heaven. He was to look up to the virgin with the eyes of a lover, and to contemplate the beauties of her person, and the graces of her carriage (8). What is more extravagant, the felicities of futurity seemed a trifle unworthy
of acceptance, without the contacts and the vanities of an irreverent courtesy. 'I would, not,' said a Troubadour, 'be in Paradise, but on the condition of making love to her whom I adore.'

The vices and example of the clergy added to the general contagion. They were to exceed not only in superb living, and in the luxuries of the table, but in the pastimes and the gratifications of illicit love. It was in vain that laws were made to prohibit them from entertaining, in their houses, 'any virgins dedicated to God.' The arts of the Popes to tear them from their women, would fill volumes. No ecclesiastic was without his concubines. The sins of the faint were gross and comfortable. In contempt of all decency, they were even to educate publicly the fruits of their amours. Rampant and dissolute, they preached religion, and were a disgrace to it; virtue and they were in haste to contemn it; another world and they were immered in the enjoyments of the present.

An universal corruption diffused itself. To be deep in debauch, and successful with the ladies, were certain marks of worth. They were parts of the eminence to which the deserving were to aspire. To be amorous and deceitful, were not less meritorious than to be brave and witty. There was exhibited a strange picture of fierceness and effeminacy, oppression and politeness, impiety and devotion.

The age, in which so many armies, inflamed with zeal, were to fight for the recovery and possession of the holy sepulchre, was remarkable for the most criminal depravity. The pilgrims and crusaders exported the vices of Europe, and imported
those of Asia. Saint Louis, during his pious and memorable expedition, could not prevent the most open licentiousness and disorder. He found houses of prostitution at the doors of his tent (12). His character, his example, and his precautions, were restraints, ineffectual and fruitless.

While the ladies of rank were to be besieged in form, to be pursued in all the windings of affection and caprice, and to oppose to their impatient lovers all the obstacles of a delicacy pretended or real, the women of inferior condition were to be approached with familiarity. It even appears to have been common for husbands to make a traffic of the chastity of their wives, though severe regulations were enacted to repress this practice (13). The offices of the laundress and the milliner, being yet no particular professions, there were in the habitations and the palaces of the rich, apartments for women; who, while they performed the services peculiar to these, were also debauched to impurity, and subservient to lust (14). Jurisdiction, being yet ambulatory, and kings, making frequent progressions through their dominions, it was usual for prostitutes to follow the court; and officers were appointed to keep them in subjection and order (15). To be marshal of the King's whores in particular places and districts, was an honor and a dignity (16).

To this degeneracy and profaneness, I am inclined to trace the law, which, in the declining condition of fiefs, made it a forfeiture of the estate, for the vassal to debauch the sister, the daughter, or the wife of his superior (17).
In the greater towns, there were women who lived openly by prostitution, exercising it as a profession. There were even whole streets which were inhabited by them. In Paris and in London, the number of public brothels was incredible. In the latter, in the days of Richard II. a Lord Mayor imported 

strumpets from Flanders, and kept stews-houses, where the dainty and the squeamish were to trade in this foreign merchandize (19.) Bordelloes or stews were permitted and sanctioned by the authority of government in every country of Europe (19). To twelve of these Henry VII. gave his licence; and signs painted on their walls distinguished them, and invited the passenger (20). So general was the licentiousness which spread itself, that the proprietors of houses found it necessary to let them out under the express condition, that the lessee should keep and harbour no common women (21). Henry VIII. who approved not love in any form, but that of matrimony, suppressed many stews-houses in Southwark, and ordained, that prostitutes should not receive the rites of the church while they lived, nor have a Christian burial, when they were dead (22).

Such were the manners, which were produced by the oppressions and disorders of fiefs and chivalry. And thus, notwithstanding what many writers have asserted, I am entitled to conclude, that the spirit of chivalry was not uniform any more than that of fiefs; and that, at different periods, its manners were opposite and contradictory.
AUTHORITIES,
CONTROVERSY,
AND
REMARKS.
Authorities, Controversy, and Remarks.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

SECTION I.

(1) 'AGRI, pro numero cultorum, ab universis per vicces occupantur, quos mox inter se secundum dignationem partiumtur.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 26. 'Privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est.' Caesar de bell. Gall. lib. 4. c. 1. The German tribes passed annually from the fields they had cultivated. 'Arva per annos mutant.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 26. 'Neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet.' Caesar de bell. Gall. lib. 4. c. 1. The condition of property among these nations I have treated in another work. Historical Discourse concerning the Antiquity of the English Constitution, Part 1.

Similar distinctions prevail in all barbarous nations, and give rise to a similar way of thinking. 'Formerly,' says Mr. Adair, 'the Indian law obliged every town to work together in one body, in sowing or planting their crops; though their fields are divided by proper marks, and their harvest is gathered separately. The Cheerake and Muskohe still observe that old custom.' History of the American Indians.

Among the Indians of Peru, it is said, that the territory occupied was the property of the state, and was regulated...
by the magistrate; and that, when individuals were permitted to possess particular spots, these, in default of male issue, returned to the community. *Royal commentaries of Peru, book 5. ch. 1. and 3.*

It seems to have arisen out of the old custom, which considered land as the property of nations, that in Europe, when all heirs failed, the property of the individual went to the *fisc,* or to the sovereign as representing the state.

*Quod si maritus & mulier sine haerede mortui fuerint, & nullus uique ad septimum gradum de propinquis & quibuscunque parentibus inuentur, tunc res fiscus adquirat.* LL. Bairewv. tit. 14. l. 9.

*Fiscus tunc agat, quando nec parentum, nec filiorum, nec nepotum, nec agnatorum, nec cognatorum, nec uxoris & mariti, quae succedat, extare competitur persona, secundum veterum constituta.* Ediculum Theoderici Regis, c. 24.

The fields in pasture belonged to the community or tribe, as well as the fields in tillage. The moment that the flocks or herds of one individual left them, they might be possessed or occupied by those of another; and so on in succession. It was under the influence of such manners that Abraham said to Lot, *'Is not the whole land before thee? separate thyself, I pray thee, from me; if thou wilt take the left-hand, then I will go to the right; or, if thou depart to the right-hand, then I will go to the left.'* Genesis, ch. xii. v. 9. And to this condition of society the Roman poets make frequent allusions, though they do not seem to have understood it with accuracy.

When the territory of a tribe or nation ceased to be its property, and individuals acquired particular spots or estates, which they cultivated for their use, and transmitted to their

* Ante Javan nulli subigebant arva coloni, Nec arare quidem, ane partiri limite campum
Faseux: in medium quaebant: ipaque tellus
Omnia liberius nullo poonte terebat.
Non domus ualla foret habuit, non fixus in agris
Qui regere certis arva lapis.*

* VIRG.*

*Non domus ualla foret habuit, non fixus in agris
Qui regere certis arva lapis.*

* TIBUL.*
posterity, it was a consequence of the old manners, that these improvements were regarded as the usurpations of the powerful on the weak; and historians assure us, that it happened both in Greece and Italy, that the land-marks which had been fixed to distinguish the boundaries of property, were frequently removed or destroyed. It seemed an encroachment on the rights of the people, that lands, which, of old, pastured indifferently the cattle of successive occupiers, should be allotted to the use and convenience only of private men. It was, accordingly, not merely necessary to make laws to prevent the violation of private rights; but, what is curious in an uncommon degree, even the termini or land-marks, that they might remain unremoved for the preservation and the separation of property, were exalted into divinities. Thus, religion, as well as policy, held out its terrors to force mankind to learn the art of appropriation, and to accept of power and riches.

Among the Celtic and German barbarians, the defacing and the removing of land-marks were also common delinquencies; and, in the punishment of them, much severity was exercised.

"Si quis limites complantaverit, aut terminos fixos fuerit auras evellere, si ingenuus est, per singula signa vel notas vicenos vi. solid. componat; si servus est, per singula signa L. flagella fuscipiat." LL. Baiovar. tit. xi. l. 1. & 2.

See farther LL. Wisigoth. lib. ro. tit. 3. De terminis & limitibus.

Boundaries and limits are also an article in the code of Gentoo laws; and the regulations it holds out on this subject are, perhaps, a proof, that the mass of the inhabitants of Hindostan, at the period of their enactment, had not lost the idea of times which preceded the discovery of the

(2) 'Dominum ac servum nullis educationis deliciis dignoscas. Inter eadem pecora; in eadem humo degunt; donec actas separat ingenuos, virtus agnoest.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 20.

(3) 'Si civitas, in qua orti sunt, longa pace & oto torpeat; plerique nobilium adolescentium petunt ulterius eas nationes, quae tum bellum aliquod gerunt, quia & ingrata genti quies, & facilius inter ancipitia clarencunt....

Nec arare terram aut expectare annum, tam facile persuaseris quam vocare hostes & vulnera mereri: Pigrum quin immo & iners videtur sudore acquirere, quod possess sanguine parare,' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 14.


The American tribes, who resemble so completely the ancient Germans, are thus characterized by Lafitau: 'Ils ont le cœur haut & fier, un courage a l'épreuve, une valeur intrépide, une constance dans les tourmens qui eft héroique, une égalité que le contre-temps & les mauvais succés n'altèrent point: Entre eux ils ont un efpece de civilité à leur mode, dont ils gardent toutes les bienséances, un respect pour leurs anciens, une déférence pour leurs egaux qui a quelquechose de surprévant, & qu'on a peine à concilier avec cette indépendance, & cette liberté dont ils paraissent extrémement jaloux: Ils font peu carellans, & font peu de demonstrations; mais non obsfiant cela, ils font bons, affables, & exercent envers les étrangers
"& les malheureux une charitable hospitalité, qui a de
quoi confondre toutes les nations de l'Europe." Moeurs
des Sauvages Américains, vol. 1. p. 106. See also
Charlevoix, Journ. Hist. lettre 21. Such, with a few excep-
tions, it is to be thought, is the character of all nations in
an early age of society.

(6) Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 15. Struvius, Corp. Hist.

(7) 'Cibi simplices, agreffia poma, recens fera, aut lac
concretum. Sine apparatu, sine blandimentis, expellunt
famem. Adversus sitim non eadem temperantia. Si indulseris
ebrietati, suggerendo quantum concupiscunt, haud minus
facile vitiis, quam armis vincentur.' Tacit. de Mor.
Germ. c. 23.

(8) 'Crebrae ut inter violentos rixae, raro conviciis,
aeplius caede & vulneribus, transfiguntur. Sed & de recon-
ciliandis invicem inimicis, & jungendis affinitatis, &
adscifendis principibus, de pace denique ac bello, plerum-
que in convivis consultant: Tanquam nullo magis tempore
aut ad simplices cogitationes pateat animus, aut ad magnas
incalceat. Gens non astuta nec callida aperit ad hoc secreta
pectoris licentia loci. Ergo detecta & nuda omnium mens
postera die retraeptatur: Et salva utriusque temporis ratio est.
'Deliberant dum fingere neciunt; constituunt dum errare non
possunt.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 22.

The deliberating on businesfs, and the holding of councils
of state during entertainments, was the practice of the Celtic
and Gothic nations. And, it is remarkable, that the word
malleum or malleus, which, during the middle ages, denoted
the national assembly, as well as the county-court, is a
derivative of mael, which signifies convivium.

From this union of festivity and businesfs, there resulted
evils which gave occasion to regulations which cannot be read
without wonder. It was a law of the Longobards, 'Ut nullus
erbius suam caufam in malleum poscit conquirere, nec testi-
monium dicere; nec comes placitum habeat nisi jejunus,'
LL. Longobard. lib. 2. tit. 52. l. xi. We read in Capit. Kar.
& Lud. 'Rectum & honestum videtur ut judices jejunis causas
'audiant & discernant.' Lib. 1. I. 62. *ap. Lindenbroc.* And
the following law was made in a synod held a Winchester
ann. 1308. 'Item, quia in personis ebriis legitimus dici non
debet consensus, inhibemus, ne in tabernis per quaecunque
verba, aut nisi jejuna salvia, vir aut mulier de contrahendo
matrimonio sibi invicem fidem dare praefumant.' *Wilkins,
Concil. tom. 2. p. 295.*

This rudeness, of which we see the source in Tacitus,
seems to have continued very long in England. 'Non exolevit
habetus mos antiquus,' says *Sir Henry Spelman,* 'nam
in mallis seu placitis, quaes affiliae jam vocantur, vicecome-
tes provinciarum bis quotannis magnam exhaerint vim
peccuniae, in judicibus nobilibusque patriae convivandis.'
*Gloss. p. 385.* In Scotland, in the memory of persons yet
alive, the lawyers and retainers of the courts of justice did
business constantly and openly in the tavern. It is likewise
observable, that some particulars which regard the institution
of the jury, are to be explained and illustrated from these facts,
and this way of thinking. *Historical Dissertation concerning
the antiquity of the English constit.* Part 4. Sec. 2.

(9) 'Nullas Germanorum populis urbes habitar, fratris
notum est, ne pati quidem inter se junctas sedes. Colunt
discreti ac diversi, ut fons, ut campus, ut nemus placuit....
Nec enim cum ubertate & amplitudine soli labore conten-
dunt, ut pomaria conferant, & prata separent, &hortos
rigent. Sola terrae seges imperatur. Unde annum quoque
ipsum non in totidem digerunt species: Hiems, & ver, &
eaestas, intellectum ac vocabula habent: Autumni perinde
nomen ac bona ignorantur.' *Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 16. 26.*

(10) 'Ceterum nec cohibere pariethus deos, neque in
ullam humani oris speciem assimilare, ex magnitudine caelest-
tium arbitrantur. Lucos ac nemora confecrant, deorumque
nominibus appellant secretum illud, quod sola reverentia
vident. Auspicia forteque ut qui maxime observant.' *Tacit.

lib. 1.

(12) 'Duces exemplo potius quam imperio, nisi prompti,
'si conspicui, si ante aciem agant, admiratione praefunt.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 7.

(13) 'Nigra scuta, tincta corpora, atras ad proelia noctes legunt... Cedere loco, dummodo rurus infites, confilii quam formidinis arbitrantur.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 6. 43.

A writer of reputation has, of late, advanced an opinion, that our European ancestors were averse from deceit and stratagem. Yet a propensity to these is perhaps a characteristic of all barbarous nations; and, that it applied to our forefathers, the testimony before us is a sufficient proof. In opposition to the barbarians of Europe, he holds out the American Indians, and contends that they are defective in active courage. Open violence he accounts as descriptive of the former; a reliance on stratagem and surprise, he remarks as peculiar to the latter. And, as the cause of this diversity, he assigns different original dispositions. Sketches of the History of Man, vol. i. p. 23. 24.

The truth is, that a proneness to open violence, is to be applied to the American as well as to the European savage; and that the love of stratagem and surprise was not less peculiar to the European than to the American. Stratagem and surprise, in America and in Germany, and indeed in all tribes and nations whatever, are parts of the art of war, or of military prudence, and refer not to courage. When the military art is nearest to perfection, and when cultivation is highest, there will be less of stratagem in war; for cunning, if I may be allowed the expression, is the wisdom of weakness. The ingenious author hazards a conjecture for a discovery, and mistakes for philosophy a fable of vivacity.

(14) 'Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines eundem civitatis iunct; atque ea juventutis exercendi ac defuliae minuendae causae coitus praedican.' Caesar de Bell. Gall. lib. 6. c. 22. 'Materia munificentiae per bella, & raptus.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 14.

Among the Greeks the same manners were known. It was common among them, in early times, for the more eminent and powerful to exercise, with reputation and honor, the
crimes of robbery and piracy. Thucydides, lib. i. Homer, 
Odyss. i. Such is the case in all rude communities. In the 
wilds of America this way of thinking is prevalent at this hour. 
Warriors, restless and impatient, associate together, and seek 
for renown and plunder beyond the boundaries of their tribe. 
It is of bodies of this kind that Lafitau speaks in the following 
passage; which is not to be read, without recalling to one's 
mind what Caesar and Tacitus have said of the Gauls and 
Germans.

'Le partis détachés, qui se forment en pleine paix, pour 
ne pas intéresser la nation par des hostilités, lesquelles 
pourroient avoir des suites fâcheuses, vont porter la guerre 
chez les peuples les plus reculés. ... Cette petite 
guerre eût un véritable affranchissement, & un brigandage, qui 
n'a nulle apparence de justice, ni dans le motif qui l'a fait 
entreprendre, ni par rapport aux peuples, à qui elle est 
faite; ils ne sont seulement pas connus de ces nations 
elloignées, ou ne le font que par les dommages qu'ils leur 
causent, lorsqu'ils vont les affamer ou de faire esclaves 
presque jusques aux portes de leur palisades. Les sauvages 
regardent cela néanmoins comme un belle aotion.' Tom. 2. 
p. 169.

It was under the influence of such manners that the northern 
nations carried on those piratical incursions, which, from the 
time of Charlemagne, filled Europe with terror. They were 
planned and conducted by men of rank, and conferred honor 
on them, and on the inferior adventurers. Yet modern 
historians, who are perpetually applying modern notions to 
ancient times, attend not to this circumstance, and treat 
these maritime expeditions with a severity that may be moral 
enough, but which is historically injudicious and absurd.

In the age of Tacitus, the only German community who 
appear to have conceived the blame of this conduct, were 
the Chauci. For the great superiority and refinement of this 
people, I pretend not to account. But though, in general, 
it conflated with honor and merit, among the German states, 
to commit spoil and plunder among neighbouring nations; 
yet, it is not to be forgot, that the theft or violence of an
individual within the territories of his own tribe, was atrocious, and a subject of punishment. This circumstance, which is curious in the history of morality, is to be explained from the condition of an infant society. Their riches, consisting chiefly of herds and flocks, which wander over vast tracts of country, are only to be protected by the terrors of justice. Hence the laws of the barbarians affixed death to the crime of stealing a horse, while the assassination, or the murder of a man, was expiated by a piece of money or a fine. 'Qui cabalum furaverit, capite puniatur.' LL. Saxon tit. 4. l. i.
The extent of their forests, while it contributed to render more easy the abstraction of cattle, made it the more necessary to punish the offence. It also was a result of their unappropriated solitudes, that the proprietors of cattle found a difficulty in tracing them. Hence the custom of fixing bells to them.
'Mos quippe antiquus inoleverat Francis, & maxime Auffraei, ut pastensibus equis tintinnabula imponerent, quo si forte longius in pasceso aberrarent, eorum sonitu dignoscì possent.' Lindenbrog. Gloss. voc. Tintinnabulum.
And what is worthy of notice, the taking away of these bells was a heinous delinquency, and punished severely. 'Si quis tintinnabulum involaverit de jumento vel bove, solidum reddat. De vacca tremisses duos; De berbicibus vel qui bufcunque pecoribus, tremisses singulos cogatur exolvvere.' LL. Wifgoth. lib. 7. tit. 2. l. 11. See also LL. Salic. tit. 29. & LL. Burgund. tit. 4. § 5. In general, the atrocity of theft among the Gothic nations, may be gathered from the following Swedish law, which is of high antiquity. 'In furti reum securi, furca, defossione, vivicomburio animadverti poße, nec eo nomine vel haeredibus, vel ecclesiae, vel regi, ullam satisfactionem deberi.' Stiernbock de jur. Suev. & Gotb. vet. p. 366.
These important circumstances in the history of manners, the legality of a dastard robbery, and the criminality of a domestic one, which are so pointedly illustrated by the early state of the Greeks, by that of the German and Celtic barbarians, and by the condition of the American tribes at this hour, receive a confirmation, of the greatest weight, from
the consideration of the Gentoo jurisprudence. In the code of Gentoo laws, there is this remarkable ordinance.

' The mode of shares among robbers is this: If any thieves, by the command of the magistrate, and with his assistance, have committed depredations upon, and brought any booty from another province, the magistrate shall receive a share of one sixth of the whole; if they receive no command or assistance from the magistrate, they shall give the magistrate, in that case, one tenth for his share; and, of the remainder, their chief shall receive four shares; and whoever among them is perfect master of his occupation, shall receive three shares; also, whichever of them is remarkably strong and stout, shall receive two shares, and the rest shall receive one share; if any one of the community of the thieves happens to be taken, and should be released from the cutcherry *, upon payment of a sum of money, all the thieves shall make good that sum by equal shares.' Code of Gentoo laws, p. 146.

A person who has not considered savage and barbarous manners, will think, with the utmost surprise, that a magistrate should not only command a robbery, and give his countenance and protection to thieves, but even participate in their plunder. Such, notwithstanding, is the system of equity among all rude nations. While distant expeditions, however, and robberies, were thus considered as legal and honorable, the disturbers of domestic quiet and happiness were punished among the Hindoos with the greatest rigor.

' If a man, say their laws, steals an elephant, or a horse, excellent in all respects, the magistrate shall cut off his hand, and foot, and buttock, and deprive him of life. If a man steals an elephant, or a horse, of small account, the magistrate shall cut off from him one hand and one foot. If a man steals a camel or a cow, the magistrate shall cut off from him one hand and one foot.' Gentoo laws, p. 249.

There are, in this code, a great variety of laws against

*A court of justice.*

domestic
domestic thefts and robberies. The state of society of the Hindoos, to which it has a reference, resembles very much that of the German barbarians, when they had overturned the empire of the Romans; and a comparison of it with the laws of the Ripuarians, Burgundians, Longobards, and Franks, would lead to many curious discoveries in the progress of legislation and government.

(15) 'Nec regibus infinita aut libera potestas.
De minoribus rebus principes consultant, de majoribus omnes. Ita tamen, ut ea quoque, quorum penes plebem arbitrium est, apud principes pertactentur. Coeunt, nihil quid fortuitum & fugitum inciderit, certis diebus, cum aut inchoatur Luna aut implectur; nam agendis rebus hoc auspiciatlimium initium credunt.
Rex vel princeps, prout aetas cuique, prout nobilitas, prout decus bellorum, prout facundia est, audiuntur, autoritate suadendi, magis quam jubendi potestate. Si displicuit sententia, fremitu aspernavtur: Sin placuit, frameas concu-tiunt.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 7. 11.

This limitation of government is a consequence of manners in early times; and, notwithstanding what is observed by many writers of antiquity, it seems very clear, that the popular or republican mode of administration is prior to monarchy.

In every rude community we know, the government has a surprising affinity to that of the Germans, as described by Tacitus. And this is peculiarly observable of the American nations. 'Tout,' says Charlevoix of the Americans, 'doit être examiné & arrêté dans les conseils des anciens, qui juge en dernière instance.' Journ. Historiq. lettr. 18.

The highest title among the Americans,' says Mr. Adair, 'either in military or civil life, signifies only a chieftain: They have no words to express despotic power or arbitrary kings. . . . The power of their chiefs, is an empty found. They can only persuade or diffuse the people, either by the force of good nature and clear reasoning, or coloring things so as to suit their prevailing passions. It is reputed merit alone that gives them any titles of distinction.
among the meanest of the people. . . . When any
national affair is in debate, you may hear every father of
a family speaking in his house, on the subject, with rapid
and bold language, and the utmost freedom that a people
can use. Their voices, to a man, have due weight in every
public affair, as it concerns their welfare alike.' Hist. of
the American Indians, p. 428. See also Laflatau, tom. 2.
P. 475.

(16) 'Ac primo statim Chaucorum gens, quamquam
incipiat a Frisii, ac partem litoris occupat, omnium quas
expofui gentium lateribus obtenditur, donec in Cattos ufque
finuetur. Tam immenfum terrarum spatum non tenent tan-
tum Chauci, fed & implent : Populus inter Germanos
nobilissimus, quique magnitudinem sua mulit jufitia tueri.
Sine cupiditate, sine impotentia, quieta secretique, nulla
provocant bella, nullis raptibus aut latrocinis populantur.
Idque praecipuum virtutis ac virium argumentum est, quod,
ut superiores agant, non per injurias affequuntur. Prompta
tamen omnibus arma, ac fi res polcat exercitus : Plurimum
virorum equorumque : Et quiescentibus eadem fama.' Tacit.
de Mor. Germ. c. 35.

'E Fennis mira feritas, foeda paupertas, non arma, non
equi, non penates: Victui herba, vestitui pelles, cubile
humus. Sola in sagittis spes, quas inopia ferri ossibus
asperat. Idemque venatus viros pariter ac feminas alit.
Paffim enim comitantur, partemque praedae petunt. Nec
aliud infantibus ferarum imbruumque suffugium, quam ut in
aliquo ramorum nexus contegantur. Huc redeunt juvenes,
hoc fenum receptaculum. Id beatus arbitrantur, quam
ingemere agris, illaborare domibus, suas alienasque fortunas
fpe metuque verfare. Securi adversus homines, securi
adversus deos, rem difficillimam afecuti sunt, ut illis ne
voto quidem opus sit.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 46.

(2) 'Verberare servum, ac vinculis & opere coercere,'Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 25.

(3) 'Domus officia uxor & liberi exequuntur.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 25. 'Liberos suos,' says Caeser of the Gauls, 'nisi quum adoleverint, ut munus militiae suffineret, posint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur; filiumque in puerili acetate in publico in conspectu patris allittere turpe ducunt.' De Bell. Gall. lib. 6. c. 18.

(4) 'Quum ex captivis quaeeret Caeser, quamobrem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret? hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germanos ea confectudo esset, ut matres familias earum fortibus & vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committti ex usu esset necne, eas ita dicere, non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.' Caeser de Bell. Gall. lib. 1. c. 50.


The honors of divinity came to be prostituted to these women with a wonderful profusion. Among the monuments of antiquity in Germany, many altars, with inscriptions to them, have been discovered; and, both in England and Scotland, there are remains of the same kind. Keysler, Antiq. Select. Septentr. & Cels. p. 379—448. Camden, Britannia, paffim. The appellation given them, in Caesar, is matres familias; and these inscriptions bear matribus or matronis Suevis, Treveris, Aufanis, &c.
Under Paganism and Christianity, the satirical acts they practiced drew upon them a very different fate. The credulity of the Pagan advanced them into goddesses. The more criminal ignorance of the Christian considered them as witches, and consigned them to the fire. Their mutterings were conceived to be magical. It was thought they could fascinate children with a look, were in covenant with demons, to whose embraces they submitted, could blast the fruits of autumn, raise commotions in the air, and interpret dreams. What is remarkable, the laws against such women, and against witchcraft, were not abrogated in England till the year 1736: And, in other countries of Europe, there are full regulations in force against these miserable objects, and this imaginary crime.


(8) "Feminae lineis amictibus velantur, eosque purpurea variant." Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 17. "Cadurci, Caleti, Ruteni, Bituriges, ultimique hominum exsiminati Morini, imo vero Galliae univerfae vela texunt. Jam quidem & Transthenani hostes: Nec pulchriorem aliam vestem eorum feminae noventur." Plin. Hist. Nat. lib. 19. c. 1. Concerning the Longobards, there is the following passage in Paulus Diaconus: "Veoffmenta eis erant laxa, & maxime linea, qualia Anglo-Saxones habere solent, ornata insititis laticibus, vario colore contextis." Hist. Longobard. lib. 4. c. 7. And of the daughters of Charlemagne, there is this notice in Eginhard. "Filias lanificio affuere, colore volo, ne per otium torperent, operam impendere, atque ad omnen honestatem erudiri jussit." Vit. Car. Mag. In America, according to Mr. Adair, the women are the chief, if not the only manufacturers. The men judge, that if they should perform offices of this kind, it would exceedingly disgrace them. Hist. of the Amer. Indians, p. 423. These offices, however, being characteristic of the women, are honorable in them. In Rome, during the virtuous times of the republic, the employments of the women were the dirtstaff.
and the spindle; and Plutarch has said, in reproach of Fulvia the widow of Clodius, that she could neither spin nor stay at home. Vit. Anton.

(9) 'Statim e somno, quem plerumque in diem extrahunt, lavantur, faepius calida, ut apud quos plurimum hiems occupat.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 22.

——— 'Mollesque flagellant
' Colla comae.'

MART. EPIG. lib. 1.

'Partemque vestitus superioris in manicas non extendunt, nuda brachia ac lacertos: Sed & proxima pars pectoris patet.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 17. 'Cet usage,' says Pelloutier, 's'est conserve en Saxe, en Prusse, & en Livonie. Les femmes y portent des chemises sans manches, & laissent leur gorge a decouvert.' Hift. des Celtes, lib. 4. ch. 4.

Diodorus Siculus, lib. 5. records the comelines both of the Gaulic and German women; and Biffula, a German beauty, is celebrated by Ausonius.

(10) 'Matrem suam,' saysTacitus of Civilis, 'sororeque, simul omnium conjuget, parvosque liberos, consilere a tergo jubes, hortamenta victoriae.' Hift. lib. 4. 'In proximo pignora; unde feminarum ululatus audiri, unde vagitus infantium... Memoriae pro lirur qualdam acies, inclinatas jam & labantes, a feminis restitutionis, constantia precum, & objectu pectorum, & monstrata cominus captivitate, quam longe imparientius feminarum fuerum nomine timent.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 7, 8. 'Ut virorum cantu, feminarum ululatu, sonuit acies.' Tacit. Hift. lib. 4. See also Caesar de Bell. Gall. lib. 1. c. 51.

'Adeo ut efficacius obligentur animi civitatum, quibus inter obsides puellae quoque nobiles imperantur.' De Mor. Germ. c. 8. Suetonius, speaking of the transactions of Augustus against the barbarians, has these words: 'A quibusdam novum genus obidum feminas exigere tentaverit; quod negligere marium pignora fentiabat.' Vit. Aug. c. 21.

(11) 'Sororum filiis idem apud avunculum qui apud
patrem honor.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 20. Hence it is, says Montesquieu, that our earliest historians speak in such strong terms of the love of the kings of the Franks for the children of their sisters. L'esprit des Lois, liv. 18, ch. 22. John de Laet remarks of the Brasilians, that they call their uncles and aunts 'fathers and mothers;' and the same custom prevails among the north American Indians. Adair, hist. of the Amer. Indians, p. 213. Among the Hurons, says Charlevoix, with whom the dignity of the chief is hereditary, the succession is continued through the women; so that, at the death of a prince, it is not his own, but his sister's son who succeeds; and, in default of him, the nearest relation in the female line. It is added, 'Si toute un branche vient à s'éteindre, la plus noble matrone de la tribu, ou de la nation, choisit le sujet, qui lui plait davantage, & le déclare chef.' Journ. Hist. Lett. 18. 'Æthiopes,' says Domascenus, 'fororibus potissimum honorem exhibent, & successionem tradunt reges, non suis, sed fororum filiis.' De mor. Gent. These facts, which coincide so curiously, express, in a forcible manner, the early importance of the sex.

(12) 'Nec aut confilia earum apernantur, aut responsa negligent.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 8. To deliberate, in public, on national concerns, was a privilege common to the women in all the Gothic and Celtic tribes. Plutarch, de virtut. mulier. Polyaeus in Stratag. lib. 7. This advantage they enjoyed also in old times in Greece. Goguet, part 2. book i. ch. 4. And, at this hour, in America, they are called to the national meetings, to give their advice and counsel. Charlevoix, Journ. Hist. let. 13. 18. 'Les femmes,' says Lafitau, 'font toujours les premières qui délibèrent, ou qui doivent délibérer, selon leur principes, sur les affaires particulières ou communes. Elles tiennent leur conseil à part, & en conséquence de leur détermination, elles donnent avis aux chefs des matières qui font sur le tapis, afin qu'ils en délibèrent à leur tour. Les chefs, sur ces avis, font assemble les anciens de leur tribu; & s'il la chose dont on doit traiter intéressa le bien
IN EUROPE.

en commun, tous se réunissent dans le conseil général de la nation." *Tome 1.* p. 477.

The German women, after their nations had made conquests, still attended to affairs. As they debated, in the days of Tacitus, in the assemblies of their tribes, so they appeared afterwards in the Gothic parliaments. Among the Franks, as well as the Anglo-Saxons, the Queens had an active share in the government; and, among the former, there is the example of a Queen who received a national homage. *Greg. of Tours,* *lib. 4.* Werburgh, Queen to King Wighred, assisted at the wittenagemot, or national council, held at Berghamsted. *Chron. Sax.* p. 48. *Malmesbury,* *lib. 2.* mentions a parliament held by King Edgar, in which he was assisted by his mother Alfgeina. And Canute is said, in a national assembly, to have acted by the advice of Queen Emma, and the bishops and nobility of England. *Mat. Welf.* p. 423.

When the crown fell to a prince in his minority, the queen-mother had the guardianship. Thus Fredegund had the guardianship of her son Clotarius II. Brunehild of her grandsons Theodebert and Theuderic, and Balthildis of her son Clotarius III.

(13) The following particulars, as well as those already mentioned, favor the notion of the importance of women in early times. *Apud Saunitas vel Samnites, de adolescentibus & virginitibus quotannis publicum habetur judicium.* Quem igitur eorum optimum esse sententia judicium pronunciari, is sibi ex virginitibus eligit uxorem quam vult, deinde secundus ab eo alteram, & sic de ceteris deinceps.* Damasc. de Mor. Gent.* Suorumae uxoribus in omnibus obtemperant, tamquam dominabus.* *Ibid.* *Lycii vitam sustinuunt ex latrociniis. Legibus autem non utuntur, sed confusetudinis, dominanturque ipsis feminae inde usque ab initio.* *Heracles de Politiis Graecorum.* "In ea regione quam Athamanes habitant, mulieres terram colunt, viri greges pastunt.* *Ibid.* *Tacitus,* discoursing of the ancient Britains, has these words. *His atque talibus invicem instructi, Boadicea generis regii femina, duce*
(neque enim sexum in imperis dicoernunt) sumptere universt
bellum. Vit. Agric. c. 16. In Homer, who paints rude manners, the women make a figure. In Virgil, who de-
scribes refined manners, they are insipid. Helen, Hecuba, Andromache, Penelope, Naupica, and Calypso, have
marked and distinct characters. But Lavinia seems to be
without passions of any kind, and to have that nothingness
of character which, in the ages of civility, is too frequently
connected with the most enchanting forms. The women
of Egypt were highly prized, and had a kind of authority
over the men. The toilets of the goddesses in Homer,
and the gay dressest of the Greek ladies, seem to mark the
consideration of the sex. At Sparta, the women interfered
in the affairs of state, and assumed a superiority over
the men. Les femmes, says Charlevoix of the Americans,
ont la principale autorité chez tous les peuples de la
langue Huronne, si on en excepte le canton Iroquois
d'Onneyourb, où elle est alternative entre les deux sexes.'

Journ. Hist. lett. 18.
The importance of women among the Hindoos, is illustra-
ted in a striking manner by the following laws.
If a person has called a modest woman unchaste, and
the woman, or her husband, should make complaint to
a magistrate, whenever the person accused appears before
the magistrate, or arbitrator, he shall, upon the spot,
answer to the complaint, and make no delay.
If a woman, impelled by any calamity, should come
to any person, and remain with him, if he commits
fornication with that woman, the magistrate shall fine
him two hundred and fifty puns of cowries.
If a man speaks reproachfully of his wife's father or
mother, the magistrate shall fine him fifty puns of cowries.
If a man is prepared to cast upon a woman's body
tears, or phlegm, or the pairing of his nails, or the gum
of his eyes, or the wax of his ears, or the refuse of
victuals, or spittle, the magistrate shall fine him forty
puns of cowries.
If a man throws upon a woman, from the neck upwards,
any spue, or urine, or ordure, or semen, the magistrate shall fine him one hundred and sixty puns of cornicles. So long as a woman remains unmarried, her father shall take care of her; and, so long as a wife remains young, her husband shall take care of her; and, in her old age, her son shall take care of her; and if, before a woman’s marriage, her father should die, the brother, or brother’s son, or such other near relations of the father, shall take care of her; if, after marriage, her husband should die, and the wife has not brought forth a son, the brothers, and brothers sons, and such other near relations of her husband, shall take care of her: If there are no brothers, brothers sons, or such other near relations of her husband, the brothers, or sons of the brothers of her father shall take care of her; and, in every stage of life, if the persons who have been allotted to take care of a woman, do not take care of her, each, in his respective stage accordingly, the magistrate shall fine them.” Code of Gentoos laws, p. 111. 163. 214.

SECTION III.

(1) "Et Venus in Sylvis jungebat corpora amantium; Concillilabat enim vel mutua quamque cupido, Vel violenta viri vis, atque impensa libido, Vel pretium, glandes, atque arbuta, vel pira lecta.”

Lucret. lib. 5.

(2) "Interfunt parentes & propinqui ac munera probant: Munera non ad delicias muliebres quaeestita, nec quibus nova nupta comatur; sed boves & frenatum equum, & scutum cum framea gladioque. In haec munera uxor accipitur, atque invicem ipsa armorum aliquid viro offert. Hoc maximum vinculum, haec arcana sacra, hos conjugales deos arbitrantur.” Tucit. de Mor. Germ. c. 18.

Remains of these usages are to be found during every period of the middle ages. About the year 500, on the
marriage of Alemberga, the niece of Theodorick King of
the Ostrogoths, that prince wrote a letter to her husband,
Hermanfrid, King of the Thuringians; from which it appears,
that dressed or accoutred horses were presented; and, in
Loccenius, there are other examples to the same purpose.
Antiq. Suego-goth. lib. 2. Among the Irish, a war-horse
and a spear were conjugal presents, till a late aera. "Ejus-
modi quidpiam," says Sir Henry Spelman, in allusion to
the passage quoted from Tacitus, "apud Germanorum nepotes
Hibernicos ipsimem aliquando deprehendimus. Equum feili-
cet militarem cum framea inter jugalia minera solennius
fuisset, sed a patre sponsae donatum. Addebat autem
Hiberni cytharam, ut blandioris fortunae foliatum."
In the American marriages, an interchange of presents
was also an essential circumstance, and gave them a sanction
and validity. "Le mariage n’est pas plutot resolu que les
parents de l’époux envoyent un present dans la cabane
de l’épouse. Ce present consiste en des colliers de por-
celaine, des pelleteries, quelques couvertures de fourrure,
& d’autres meubles d’usage, qui vont aux parents de la
fille, a laquelle on ne demande point de dot; mais seule-
ment qu’elle veuille accepter l’époux qu’on lui offre. Ces
fortes de presents ne se font pas seulement une fois, il
s’en fait un espèce d’alternative entre les deux cabanes
des futurs époux, laquelle a ses loix prescrites par la
coutume; mais, dès que les presents sont acceptés, le
mariage est cense conclu, & le contrat passé." Lafitau,
From the words of Tacitus, it appears, that among the
Germans the consent of the parents or relations was particu-
larly necessary in the contracting of marriages; and this
is still more obvious from the laws of the barbarians, after
they had made conquests. LL. Visigoth, lib. 3. tit. 2. 4. 8.
LL. Saxon. tit. 6. LL. Frisonum, tit. 9. The reason was,
that the young men and the young women might not,
through passion, marry into families hostile to their own.
In a state of society which is confined, and where govern-
ment is imperfect, divisions and animosities among chiefs are frequent, and carried to extremity. It is useful to remark, that the necessity of this consent, and the similar disorder of the feudal manners, ascertained the incident of marriage; in consequence of which, the wards of a superior could not marry without his approbation. This incident, which was to grow so important, is to be traced back to the woods of Germany. Hist. Diflert. concerning the antig. of the English constitution, part 2.

(3) 'Nec fe mulier extra virtutum cogitationes, extraque bellorum casus putet, ipsis incipientis matrimonii auspiciis admonetur, venire fe laborum periculorumque sociam, idem in pace idem in bello passuram auffsaramque; hoc juncti boves, huc paratus equus, hoc data arma denuntiavit. Sic vivendum, sic pereundum.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 18.

The matrimonial gifts among the savages of America, expressed, in like manner, the labor to which the women were to submit, and were doubtefs to be understood in the same light, as indications of equality, and expressions of respect. Yet Charlevoix affects to consider them rather as marks of slavery, than as testimonials of friendship. Journal. Hist. let. 19. Of this author, it is to be wished, that he had given his facts without reafoning upon them; or, that he had endeavoured to be consistent with himself; for, in other parts of his writings, we are led to conceive a high opinion of the state of the American women. My Lord Kaims and Mr. Millar seem, in the present cafe, to have estimated too highly his opinion. And I am sensible that Dr. Robertson has subscribed to their sentiments. They join, in confidering the presents to the women as characteristic of the meanness of their condition, and of their being the slaves of the men. They connect slavery with labor and business, without reflecting, that ease and luxury cannot possibly belong to women in barbarous times, and that, in all times, the men and women are to be judged of by different standards. The warrior does not apply the same rules to his son and his daughter, and does not
fancy that they are to shine alike in feats of arms. Valor he accounts the chief quality of the former; in the latter, he requires something more of gentleness, and a skill in domestic affairs. Of this there is a very strong and apt illustration in Mr. Adair, with which I will conclude this note.

The American Indians lay their male children on the skins of panthers, on account of the communicative principle, which they reckon all nature is possessed of, in conveying qualities according to the regimen followed; and, as the panther is endowed with many qualities beyond any of his fellow animals in the American woods, as smelling, strength, cunning, and a prodigious spring, they reckon such a bed is the first rudiments of war. But, it is worthy of notice, that they change the regimen of nurturing their young females: These they lay on the skins of fawns, or buffalo-calves, because they are shy and timorous; and, if the mother be indisposed by sickness, her nearest female relation suckles the child, but only till she recovers. Hist. of the American Indians, p. 421.

I enter not into the dispute, whether there be panthers in America, or whether this name is only given to distinguished animals which resemble them. In either case, my argument is safe, and to the point.


(5) Severa ilic matrimonia. . . . . Paucissima in tam numerosa gente adulteria, quorum poena praeceptis & maritis permissa. Accipis crinibus, nudate coram proprioquia expellit domo maritus, ac per omnem vicum verbera agit. Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 18, 19.
The power of the husband to punish the adultery of the wife continued long during the middle ages. *LL. Wifgeoth. lib. 3. tit. 4. l. 3, 4. LL. Burgund. tit. 68. l. 1.* It seems natural in a state of society, before the jurisdiction of the magistrate is fully acknowledged; and it is to be found accordingly among the Americans and other nations. *Laistau, tom. 1. p. 588. Europ. Settem. vol. 1. p. 180.*

It is likewise to be observed, that the same mode of punishment prevailed long. ‘Adulterii poena,’ says *Lindenburgius,* ‘decalvari & fustari per vicos vicinantes.’ *Gioff. p. 1349.* See farther *LL. Longobard. lib. 1. tit. 17. l. 5.* When the magistrate came to punish this delinquency, and when the women, growing more detached from business, considered themselves as objects of luxury and pleasure, the crime of adultery appeared less heinous and offensive; and a separation or divorce, with the infamy of incontinence, became the punishment of an adulteress.

From the assembled relations of the culprit, of whom *Tacitus* speaks, it is to be imagined, that, in conjunction with the husband, they constituted a court, and sat upon her in judgment. *Coram propinquis expellit domo maritum.* Before the jurisdiction of the magistrate is fully under foot and unfolded, it appears, that a kind of domestic tribunal exercises authority, and forms a step in the progress of civil and criminal jurisdiction. This, in fact, we know to have been the case among the Romans. *Dion. Halicarn. Antiq. Rom. lib. 2.*


*Tacitus,* in this passage, as well as in many other places of his sentimential and incomparable treatise, glances at the depraved manners of the Romans. The expression *non opimus,* of which I have made no use in the text, applies not to the German tribes who inhabited the inland country, but to those who bordered on the territories of the Romans.
The same attentions to chastity, so beautifully described by the Roman historian, prevailed among the Americans. "Ils attribuent à la virginité & à la chasteté certaines qualités & vertus particulières." Laistre, tom. i. p. 339. Thus it is in all rude nations; and, I believe, it will be found, on examination, that those circumstances of immodesty among them, which oppose this way of thinking, have their rise in the weaknesses of superstition, and in the abuses of the priesthood.

Nature adorns and protects the female sex with modesty. And, it is a most decisive proof of the respect paid to women, that, in almost all nations, the institution of marriage is connected with usages, which are contrived to favor and encourage their reserve and chastity. It is the male always who solicits; and, in some states, a kind of violence was employed to support and succour the modesty of the bride. It seems to have been thus in early times among the Romans, and it was obviously so among the Spartans. In the former case, the bride appears to have been carried forcibly from the lap of her mother; in the latter, the affair assumed the semblance of a rape. Festus, Catullus, Plutarch in Vit. Lycurg. & Quaest. Rom. The virgin and her relations, no doubt, understood previously the transaction, and expected this violence. But it was a compliment to her thus to give an air of constraint to her consent, to relieve her embarrassment and distress, her emotion of fear and hope, anxiety and tenderness.

It was with a similar view that the Romans conducted a bride to the house of her husband, with her head covered. And the Germanic nations paid also this mark of respect to the modesty of their women, after they had made conquests. Compare Apul. Metam. lib. 4. Tacit. Annal. lib. 15. c. 37. And the laws of the barbarians de conjugali velatione.

These circumstances, and those which I formerly remarked, with others not less expressive of the early importance of women, that I am presently to mention, seem to have escaped my Lord Kaime and Mr. Millar; and I beg it to
be understood, that I oppose thus frequently their opinions from no captiousness of temper, but because, if they are just, mine must be ill founded and improper.

(7) *Sera juvenum venus; eoque inexhausta, pubertas; nec virgines festinantur; eadem juventa, similibus proceritas: Pares validaeque miscentur; ac robora parentum liberi referunt. . . . Quanto plus propinquorum, quo major adinimum numerus, tanto gratior feneptus: Nec ualla orbitatis pretia. . . . . Numerum liberorum finire, aut quemquam ex agnatis necare, flagitium habetur.* Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 19, 20.

(8) *Sua quemque mater uberibus alit, nec ancillis, ac nutricibus delegantur.* Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 20. This also is the practice in America and in all rude communities. *Les sauvages n’ont garde de donner leur enfants à d’autres pour les nourrir. Elles croient se dépouiller de l’affectation de mère, & elles sont dans une surprise extrême de voir qu’il y ait des nations au monde, où cet usage soit reçu & établi.* Laftau, tom. I. p. 593. The Roman virtue was at an end, says the author of the dialogue concerning orators, when the women gave their children to be suckled and educated by Greek nurses and slaves. Cap. 29. In France, till the age of Charles V. princesse, and ladies of high rank, continued to suckle and educate their children. Mersonay in Bulteel’s translation, p. 388.

(9) A very ingenious writer has observed, that, before marriage is known as a regular institution, the interest of the mother must be great; children being then, in a particular manner, under her jurisdiction, and having no connexion, or a distant one, with the father. His observation is not to be controverted; and, accordingly, he mentions the circumstance, as an exception to his theory. *Prof. Millar concerning the Distinction of Ranks, ch. 1. sect. 2.*

It is obvious, that the respect which the children pay to the mother in this situation, raises the importance of the sex; and it is worthy of notice, that, after marriage is known as an institution, and the husband and wife live
together in the same cabin, the influence of the mother is by no means diminished. For, though the father then acquires authority, the more amiable and winning attentions of the mother preserve and continue her consideration; and the military pursuits of the former calling him abroad, and employing his thoughts, leave to her the task of educating their offspring. Thus, among the Gauls and Germans, it was not till children attained a certain age, that they dared publicly to approach their fathers. Sel. 2. note 3.

'Les enfants,' says Charlevoix of the Americans, 'n'appritent qu'à la mère, & ne reconnaissent qu'elle. Le père est toujours comme étranger par rapport à eux.'

Journ. Hist. let. 19. It is our nature to be more attached to what is lovely and gentle, than to what is stern and venerable. It is 'the soft green of the soul,' as an elegant writer * expresses it, 'on which the eye delights to rest.' (10) *Septa pudicitia agunt, nullis spectaculorum illecebris, nullis conviviorum irrationibus corruptae. Literarum secreta viri pariter ac feminae ignorant.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 19.

That knowledge and letters were incentives to corruption, we have also the opinion of Sallust, who, notwithstanding the freedom of his life, is a beautiful declaimer on the side of morality. It is of Sempronia that he thus speaks:

'Literis Graecis docta: Pfallere & saltare elegantius, quam necesse est probae: Multa alia norat, quae instrumenta luxuriae sunt, sed ei cariora semper omnia quam decus & pudicitia fuit.' De Bel. Catull.

(11) These things, which are curious, are illustrated by the following passage of Tacitus. 'Melius quidem adhae eae civitates, in quibus tantum virgines nubunt, & cum sfe votoque uxor is semel transigitur. Sic unum accipient maritum, quo modo unum corpus, unamque vitam, ineulla cogitatione ultra, ne longior cupidias, ne tamquam maritum, sed tamquam matrimonium ament.' De mor. Germ. c. 19.

The matrimonial symbols, as was formerly observed,

* Mr. Burke.

Note
Note 2. consisted chiefly of an interchange of arms; but, among those nations of the barbarians who, after their conquests, became accustomed to the manners of the Romans, this usage suffered an early innovation. The symbols of arms were often neglected for those of money. And the broaching *per solidum & denarium* grew to be a fashion.

Thus, according to the Salic law, a *virgin* was married *per solidum & denarium*. *Convenit ut ego te solido & denario secundum legem Salicam sponfare deberem; quod ita & feci.* *Form. Solen. 75. ap. Lindenbrog.* But it was not so with the *widow*. The symbols were augmented; and it is to be conceived, that their augmentation expressed that of the dower. *Si quis homo moriens viduam dimiserit; & eam quis in conjugium voluerit accipere; antequam eam accipiat Tunginus aut Centenarius mallum indicet, & in ipso mallo scutum habere debet, & tres homines causas tres demandare; & tunc ille qui viduam accipere vult, cum tribus testibus qui adprobare debet; tres solidos aegue pensisatis & denarium habere debet.*

*Lex. Sat. tit. 46. c. 1.* The spirit of the German manners opposing second marriages, made it necessary to bribe, as it were, the modesty of the widow.

It deserves remark, that traces of the connexion of disgrace with second marriages, as to the women, are to be found in almost all nations; and this circumstance, so favorable to the modesty of the sex, is a striking proof of their early importance. There were ages of the Grecian and Roman manners when this disgrace prevailed in all its force; and even among races of men the most savage, the immodesty of second marriages is repressed by particular usages.

*Chez les habitants des côtes de Cumana,* says an ingenious writer, *avant que de bruler le corps du mari, on en sépare la tête; on la porte à sa veuve, pour que la main posée dessus, elle jure de la conserver précieusement, & de ne jamais se remarier. Une veuve, chez les Caffres & les Hottentots, chaque fois qu'elle se remarie, est*
obligée de le couper un doigt." St. Foix, Essais Historiques sur Paris, tom. 5. p. 177.

(12) The King, according to Domesday book, demanded 20 shillings for the marriage of a widow, and 10 shillings for that of a virgin. 'Mulier accipiens quocunque modō maritum, si vidua dabat Regi 20's. si puella 10's. quilibet modo acciperet virum.' Domesl. tit. Scropesberie, ap. Spelman, voc. Maritagium. There is good evidence, that, in several cities of Germany, in the middle times, fines were paid to the magistrate on the marriage of a widow.


(13) Thus, the ravishing of a widow was punished more severely than that of a virgin. 'Si quis virginem rapuerit contra ipsius voluntatem & parentum ejus, cum. xl. fol. componat, & alios xl. cogatur in fisco. Si autem viduam rapuerit quae coacta ex tecto egreditur orphanum, & pro penuriae rebus, cum lxxx. fol. componat, & lx. cogatur in fisco.' LL. Baiuar. tit. 7. l. 6. 7.

By the way, this early severity against rapes, is a strong confirmation of my general argument, and is direct against the opinions of my Lord Kaims and Mr. Millar. The reputation of females suffering, in this way, was for ever marked with disgrace. No suitors were now to court their alliance. Yet their minds had received no pollution, and their innocence could not be impeached. Their bodies, however, had been abused; and the loss of value attending this abuse, with the severe punishment of their violators, express clearly the high and natural importance of the sex.

In the Gentoo code, the consideration of the sex is also illustrated by laws too explicit to admit of doubt or cavil, and still more severe.

'If a man by force commits adultery with a woman of an equal or inferior cast, against her consent, the magistrate shall confiscate all his possessions, cut off his penis, and castrate him, and cause him to be led round the city, mounted upon an ass.

'If a man, by cunning and deceit, commits adultery with a woman of an equal or inferior cast, against her
In Europe

"Consent, the magistrate shall take all his possessions, brand him in the forehead with the mark of the pudendum muliebre, and banish him the kingdom.

If a man, by violence, or by cunning, or deceit, or against the woman's consent, commits adultery with a woman of a superior cast, the magistrate shall deprive him of life.

If a man, either by violence or with her consent, commits adultery with an unmarried girl of a superior cast, the magistrate shall put him to death." Code of Gentoo Laws, ch. 19.

(14) "Singulis uxoribus contenti sunt, exceptis admodum paucis, qui non libidine, sed ob nobilitatem, plurimis nuptiis ambiuntur." Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 18.

This, says Montesquieu, explains the reasons why the kings of the first race had to great a number of wives. These marriages were less a proof of incontinence, than a consequence of dignity; and it would have wounded them, in a tender point, to have deprived them of such a prerogative. This, continues he, explains, likewise, the reason why the example of our kings was not followed by their Subjects. L'esprit des Lois, liv. 18. c. 25.

I know that my Lord Kaims has spoken of the polygamy of the Germanic nations; but the authority to which he appeals in proof of his notion, is the passage now cited from Tacitus, which is most directly against him. Sketches, vol. 1, p. 192. And indeed he has remarked, in another portion of his work, 'That polygamy was never known among the northern nations of Europe.' Vol. 1, p. 316. I am at a loss to reconcile these opinions; and this ingenious author appears to have forgotten, that, in the states of Germanic and Gothic origin, there were even severe laws against polygamy. LL. Longob. lib. 2, tit. 13, l. 1, 3, 5. LL. Wisigoth. lib. 3.

The plurality of wives is a consequence of luxury and pride, and does not uniformly distinguish rude times, even in climates which encourage and infuse the passion. In general, one man is then connected with one woman, and satisfied with her; and it is a proof of the antiquity of monogamy, that,
when a plurality of wives is uniformly indulged, which happens not till the ages of property, there is always one of those who seems more peculiarly the wife; the rest appearing only as so many concubines.

The appetite for the sex, it is to be observed, is not nearly so strong in rude, as in cultivated times. Hardship and fatigue, the great enemies of inordinate love, waste the barbarian. ‘Il est de l’ancien usage,’ says Lafort, ‘parmi la plupart des nations sauvages, de passer la première année, après le mariage contracté, sans le conformer; ... Et quoique les époux passent la nuit ensemble, c’est sans préjudice de cet ancien usage.’ Tome 1, p. 575. Eafe and good living, on the contrary, flatter the fensés in the ages of property. And, an abstinence of this sort would, doubtless, surprise very much the most timid and the most delicate of our virgins.

(15) The fortunate marriages of the relations of Dumnorix, are said, by Caesar, to have constituted a great proportion of his power. De Bel. Gall. lib. 1. c. 18. In the same author, there is the following notice concerning the wives of Ariovistus. ‘Duæ fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueca natione, quam domum secum adduxerat; altera Norica, regis Vocionis foror, quam in Gallia duxerat, a fratre missam.’ De Bel. Gall. lib. 1. c. 53.

Tacitus says expressly, that deliberations on the subject of marriage were frequent in the council’s of a German state. De Mor. Germ. c. 22. And, in that singular work, the Atlantica of Rudbeck, there is this passage. ‘In concilii Upalenibus decretum suit, ut Olaus Rex Sueoniae filiam suam in matrimonio daret Olao Regi Norvagiae.’ P. 214.

(16) After the introduction of Christianity, a multitude of laws were enacted against incestuous marriages; and these prove, that little delicacy was previously paid to relation or descent. ‘Uxorrem habere non liceat socrum, nurum, pri-vignam, novercam, filiam fratris, filiam fororis, fratris uxorem, uxoris fororum: Filii fratrum, filii fororum, inter se nulla praesumptione jungantur.’ LL. Baiuvar.
In Scotland, about the year 1093, 'it was not uncommon,' says my Lord Hailes, 'for a man to marry his step-mother, or the widow of his brother.' The learned and ingenious author adds, 'I presume that this was not owing to vague lust, but to avarice; for it relieved the heir of a jointure.' Annals of Scotland, p. 39. The observation is acute; but I am afraid that, though in some instances it might be just, it will not vindicate the Scots from the grossness and indecency which the prevalence of the custom fixes upon them. Even in France, at a later period, an 1454, the Count D'Armagnac married publicly his own sister. St. Foix, Ess. Hist. vol. 5, p. 130. The strange liberties taken by ancient nations are sufficiently known. A Persian acted in conformity to the laws, and to justice, when he married his mother; and an Egyptian when he married his sister.

In times of refinement and delicacy, virtue takes the alarm, even at the recital of such facts; but the philosopher, struck with their universality over all societies, however distant and distinct, is disposed to inquire, Where it is that nature has placed her barriers; and what, on this head, in the codes of nations, is to be explained by natural law, and what by a policy civil and religious? The topic is full of curiosity, but not for the present purpose.
(1) The total change produced in the condition of Europe by the settlements of the barbarous nations, is ascribed by many writers, and by Dr. Robertson in particular, to the destructive violence with which they carried on their conquests, and to the havoc which they made from one extremity of this quarter of the globe to the other. *History of Charles V. vol. 1. p. 11. 197, 198.*

It is to be remembered, notwithstanding, that the conquerors incorporated themselves, in some provinces, with the vanquished; that much of the havoc and violence so pompously described by ancient historians, is to be referred to the wars they carried on among themselves; and that, where havoc and violence were least known, the change produced was, with the exception of a few circumstances, as general and complete as where they were experienced in the greatest degree. Thus, chivalry and the feudal institutions prevailed, in every step of their progress, in every country of Europe.

In illustration, indeed, of his opinion, Dr. Robertson has said, that where havoc prevailed in no great degree, as in England, on the Norman invasion, the ancient inhabitants retained their own manners. It is certainly very true that the Anglo-Saxons retained their own manners. This, however, was no effect of the cause he has mentioned. The Norman revolution was not a conquest *. A victory was obtained by Duke William over Harold and his followers; but no victory was obtained over the people of England. And, even on the hypothesis that the Duke of Normandy had conquered England, his illustration is without force. For the manners and policy of the Normans were the same with

* See a Discourse prefixed to Dr. Sullivan's Lectures.
of the Anglo-Saxons; with this difference, that the
former were, in some measure, a more improved people.

The completereness of the revolution consequent on the
settlements of the barbarians, is chiefly to be ascrib'd, as
I observe in the text, to the immense difference of manners
in the conquerors and the conquered. The former were in a
condition of growing civility; the latter in a state of hopeless
corruption. The German was approaching to perfection: The
Roman had been declining from it. They mutually deplored
one another, and were urged on in different directions. The
former, therefore, yielding to, and governed by the manners
to which he had been accustomed, became necessarily the
founder of new and peculiar establishments.

(2) ' Agri pro numero cultorum ab universis per vices
occupantur, quos mox inter se secundum dignationem
partiuntur. Facilitatem partiendo camporum spatia praebat.
'Arva per annos mutant, & supe rfect ager.' Tacit. de Mor.

This interesting information is well illustrated in the fol-
loving relation from Caes. 'Suevorum gens est longe
maxima & bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum
pagos habere dicuntur; ex quibus quotannis singula melia
armatorum, bellandi causa, suis ex finibus educunt. Reliqui
domi manent: Pro se atque illis colunt. Hi rursus invicem
anno post in armis sunt: Illi domi remanent. Sic neque
agricultura, neque ratio, neque usus belli intermittitur:
Sed privati ac separatii agri apud eos nihil est: Neque longius
anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet; neque
multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore
vivunt, multumque suum in venationibus.' De Bell. Gall.
lib. 4. c. 1.

(3) From some remarkable passages in Tacitus, it is to be
gathered, that, even in his age, the Germans were beginning
to have an idea of a private property in land. This im-
provement would probably take place among the princes or chiefs,
and in those districts which joined to the Roman frontiers;
and it is to be conceived, that the portions of ground first
appropriated, would be those around the cabins or huts of
individuals. For each hut was surrounded with an enclosure. And it was doubtless out of this enclosure that the German slave, being assigned land by his master, paid, in return, like a tenant, a proportion of corn, cattle, or cloth. "Ceteris servis; non in nostrum morem descriptis per fami lae ministriis utuntur. Suam quisque sedem, suos pecunias regit. "Frumenti modum dominus, aut pecoris, aut vestis, ut colono injungit: Et servus haec peract." Tacit, de Mor. Germ. c. 25. This appropriation of land, and exertion over it, would spread by degrees, and enlarge the notions of property.

In fact, it would seem, that this conduct was observed after the German conquests; and that the German enclosure, or the lands of the house, and the assignment of them to slaves or servants, were usual. A proprietor or noble retained, to be cultivated by his servants, for domestic use and hospitality, the land which was inter curtem, or within view of the house or hall. What was out of the view of the house or hall, was given out in tenancy. Hence, among the Anglo-Saxons, the distinction of inland and outland. The inland, was the land inter curtem, or the land of the house: The outland was the land out of the view of the house. Brittic, the rich Anglo-Saxon, had inland and outland, and disposed of them, in his will, to different persons.

What is worthy of observation, the method of paying in kind, practiced in Germany, and mentioned by Tacitus, continued also in the settlements of the barbarians, and even after they had become acquainted with coinage. Thus, in estates which had been long in any family, there were payments in poultry, and in necessaries for the house. Du Cange Gloss. voc. Gallinagium & Henedpeny. At this hour, both in England and Scotland, there are relics of this usage.

* * * Inland, & Inlandum. Terra dominicalis, pars manerii dominica. Vox Saxorum, terram interiorem signifi cans, nam quae coloniis & tenentibus concedatur, utland dicta fuit, hoc est terra exterior, hodie tenementalis." Spelman, Gloss. p. 316.

† Lambard, Perambulation of Kent. "Lego," says Brithic, "terras dominicales Wulfego, tenementales Ælfego."
In England, it was not till the age of Henry I. that the rents due to the crown were paid in money. 'In the early days,' says Madox, 'next after the Norman conquest, if we are rightly informed, there was very little money, in specie, in the realm. Then the tenants of knights fees answered to their Lords by military services; and the tenants in socage lands and demesnes (in great measure) by work and provisions. The ingenious author of the Dialogue concerning the Exchequer tells us, that, from the time of the Norman conquest, till the reign of King Henry I., the rents or ferms due to the king were wont to be rendered in provisions and necessaries for his household*. And that, in King Henry the First's time, the same were changed into money. Afterwards, in the succeeding times, the revenue of the crown was answered or paid, chiefly in gold and silver; sometimes in palfreys, destriers, chafiers, leveriers, hawks, and falcons, (to wit, in horses, dogs, and birds of game of divers sorts), and in things of other kinds.' Hist. of the Exchequer, vol. 1. p. 272.

(4) Allodial lands were enjoyed in full property, and are therefore opposed to feudal or beneficary posseffions, which were received with limitations, and under the burden of military service to the grantors.

The Ripuarians, the Burgundians, and, indeed, all the barbaric nations, appear to have had lands of partition or allodial property. LL. Ripuar. tit. 56. LL. Angl. & Werin. tit. 6. LL. Baltoar. tit. 2. c. 1. l. 3. tit. 11. c. 5. tit. 17. l. 2. Capit. Kar. & Lud. lib. 3. l. 20. Marcolph. Form. 16. 18. 51. 62. 67. ap. Lindenbrog.

Some writers affirm, that the Salic lands were lands of lox or partition, and yet contend that they were feudal. This

---

* In the Saxon times of King Ina, the provisions paid for ten hides of land were as follows: * Ex. decem hydis, ad nutriendum, decem dolia mellis, trecenti panes, duodecim amphorae Wallciae cerevicae, triginta simplices, duo adulti arietes, vel decem verveces, decem anferes, viginti gallinae, decem caesi, amphora plena butyro, quinque salmones, viginti libros pondo pabuli, & centum anguaillae solvantur.' LL. Inae ap Wilkins, p. 25.
is certainly an absurdity. It is to be confessed, notwithstanding, that Du Cange, and many lawyers of great ability, have adopted this notion. *Differt. 17. sur l'Histoire de St. Louis, p. 244. Selden, vol. 3, p. 1099* *n*. The authority against them is most express and pointed. It is the text itself of the Salic law which actually treats de alode, and refers to no property that was not alodial. *L. L. Sal. ap. Lindenbroc. p. 342.* What confounded Du Cange, was the following celebrated law of this text. 'De terra vero Salica nulla portio haereditatis *miti et veniat; sed ad virilem sexum tota terrae haereditas perveniat.' He knew that women could not, in the commencement of fiefs, pretend to lands which were held by a military tenure; and, as they are thus barred from the Salic lands, he thence conceived that these must be feudal.

But the circumstance of the exclusion of the women from the Salic lands is, by no means, to be accounted for on feudal principles. The women were excluded from property while the Germans were in their forests; and this law or usage they carried into their conquests. It is thence that, in the lands of *lot* or *partition*, the women were not considered; and it is thus, that this difficulty in the Salic text is to be explained, without the necessity of conceiving the feudality of the Salic lands, in contradiction to the Salic law.

Though the barbarians respected highly their women, the admission of them to land was altogether a new idea. For if, leaving the Salic law, we inquire into the alodial property, and the alodial laws of the other tribes, we shall find, that even in these, the women were not admitted to land while there existed any male. The ideas of the barbarians required to enlarge before this admission had place, and before they could so far violate their ancient customs. The innovation,

* Selden observes, that 'the best interpretation of terra Salica, is by our knight's fee, or land holden by knight's service.' I have an infinite veneration for the learning and abilities of this great man. I cannot, however, but differ from him on this occasion. The knight's fee and knight's service, were late inventions in the history of fiefs, and cannot be carried back to the early aera of the Salic law. Even if they could, they would still be ineffectual to support his conclusion.
as might be expected, was gradual. In the title, accordingly, de Alodibus in the Ripuarian text, we read; 'Dum virilis sexus extiterit, femina in haereditatem aviatricam non succedat.' Lindenborg. p. 46c. See also L.L. Anglor. & Wernor. tit. 6. It is, I conceive, by this and similar ordinances, that the celebrated Salic law, which imposed on the Franks, and on so many lawyers, is to be interpreted. Among the Salians and Franks, as well as among the other barbarous nations, when there were no males, the women were admitted to the property of the lands of lot or partition.

After having made these remarks, it is fit I should give some account of the word Alodie, or Aloe; and a learned Judge, who is studious to cultivate literature in the intervals of business, and who has distinguished himself by laborious and instructive compositions in an idle and a dissipated age, has done me the honor to present me with the following communication on this subject.

'Al-o-d, in the Latin of the lower ages alodium; hence the adjective alodialis; and hence, from the analogy of language, allodial, and allodiality may be formed. Of Al-o-d the French have made Alleud, aleu.

'As to the etymology of the word, there is a variety of opinions; for learned men are apt to reject obvious etymologies, and to prefer those which are more remote. It would seem to be a good rule in such matters, that "the etymology which is nearest to the word, is the most probable."

'Al is totus, integer, & absolutus. There is no occasion for proving this: The sense is in daily use among the northern nations of Europe. Od is status, or possessio. The Scottish word bad, and the English bold, are derived from this source, and the word itself is still visible in the English compounds, manhood, womanhood, maidenhood, etc.

'The Anglo-Saxon word, corresponding to this, is Hod, status or possessio. Thus, Al-o-d, is totus integer & absolutus status, or tota integra & absoluta possessio.

'The etymology of Al-o-d confirms the opinion of Selden and others as to the etymology of Feod, in the Latin of the
lower ages Feodum, Feodum. Fe is beneficium or stipendium; Od or Hod, is status; therefore, Feod is status stipendarius, or possessio stipendiaria. Odal is Aiod inverted, status integer, or possessio tota & absoluta.

There is no difference between odal and udal. The Scots turned the Norwegian ore, a denomination of weight, into ure, and, in like manner, they turned odal into udal. If the Norwegian o was pronounced as oe, the change is scarcely perceptible. After the same manner the French have turned alod into aleud.

It may be objected, that there are two syllables more in allodial than in odal or udal; and that, although etymologists often drop an embarrassing syllable or two, yet that such liberties are not allowable. The answer is obvious. Allodial is an adjective; and the word subject, or land, or something similar, is understood. But odal or udal is a substantive; and it is only from ignorance or misapprehension, that the word is used as an adjective. Thus, in propriety of speech, we say, ‘The lands in Orkney are to be considered as udal;’ although, in common speech, we say, ‘The udal lands of Orkney,’ and the ‘udal possessio in Orkney.’

(5) Dr. Robertson has affirmed, that the barbarians, while in their original feats, were not, in consequence of the condition of the landed property, brought under any positive or formal obligation to serve the community. Hist. of Charles V. vol. 1. p. 213.

It is obvious, however, that the partition of land received by the individual from the tribe, subjected him to serve the community. The person who did not serve it had no claim to any partition. Persons under the military age had no partitions, because they could give no service. Persons, who had attained this age, could give service, and entitle themselves to partitions. The former were parts of the family, the latter were members of the republic. See Note 2. and compare it with Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 13. Of this law of partition, it was even a consequence, that the coward was a criminal, because he could give no service, and was unable to entitle
himself to a subsistence or partition. He was therefore deemed unworthy of existence, and put to death, or expelled beyond the frontiers of his nation. *Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 12.*

I have said, that the lands of lot or partition, of which the grant or use was the distinction of the freeman and the citizen in the days of Tacitus, were also given after the conquests of the barbarians, under the general obligation of serving the community. And here is my evidence.

'Quicunque liber homo a comite suo fuerit ammonitus, aut ministris ejus, ad patriam defendendam, & ire neglexerit, & exercitus supervenerit ad ilius regni vaflagionem vel contrarietatem, fidelium nostrorum capitis subjaceat sententiae.' *Capitularia apud Baluz. tom. 2. p. 325.*

'Si aliquis in alio suo quiete vivere voluerit, nullus ei aliquod impedimentum facere praeferat, neque alius aliquid ab eo requiratur, nisi sollemento ut ad patriae defensionem pergat.' *Capit. Car. Calv. Ibid. p. 264.*

'Et qui ad defensionem patriae non occurerint, securum dum antiquam consuetudinem & capitulorum constitutionem judicentur.' *Capit. Car. Cal. tit. 36. c. 27. Ibid. p. 187.*

Hence it is to be concluded, that the stipulation of serving the community was very ancient; and thus too, the opinion I maintain, that this obligation was known to the old Germans, receives a confirmation. In reality, the sense of the obligation must have been stronger before than after their conquests. The citizen of a small community enters with ease into its views, and is zealous to promote them. The arrangements, on the contrary, of a great kingdom, are not easily perceived. A plain individual does not know the motives and the agents which put everything into motion. His attention is more turned from the public, and penal regulations are necessary to preserve him in his duty. History confirms this remark. For, early after the barbaric conquests, regulations of this kind were made; and *allodial* proprietors, to avoid serving the community, devised the fraud of assigning their lands to the church, and of holding them under its exemptions and immunities.
Thence, it is observable, who held possessions merely alodial, could only be called out in foreign wars, and against the enemies of the state. As they held of no superior or lord, they had no concern in private quarrels, and made no part in the feudal association. This circumstance, if judged by modern ideas, was advantageous. It was, in fact, however, the reverse, and operated as a cause of the conversion of alodium into tenure.

(6) Monsr. Bignon, in his notes to Marcusphus, expresses, with a delicate precision, the distinction between alodial lands, or the lands of partition, and the lands of the fisc. 'Omnia namque praedia, aut propra erant, aut fiscalia. Propria seu proprietates dicebantur quae nullius juri obnoxia erant, sed optimo maximo jure possidebantur, ideoque ad haeredes transfibant. Fiscalia vero, beneficia five fisci vocabantur, quae rege ut plurimum, posteaque ab aliis, ita concedebantur, ut certis legibus servitutisque obnoxia, cum vita accipientis finirentur.' Not. ad Marcuph. ap. Bals. tom. 2. p. 875.

It is even from fiscus that the term fief was formed; and, though the lands of the fief meant originally only the benefices granted out by the sovereign, they came to express the subinfeudations of the crown-vassals. Du Cange, voce Fiscus, Manus Regum. Assises & bons usages du Royaume de Jerusalem, avec des notes par Gaspard Thaumas de la Thaumaisire, p. 103. 245.

(7) 'Principes jura per pagos viculique redduntur. . . .

Insignis nobilitas aut magna patrum merita, principis dignationem etiam adolecentulis assignant. Ceteris robustioribus ac jampridem probatis aggregantur. . . .

Magni comitum aemulatio, quibus primus apud principem suum locus; & principum cui plurimi & acerrimi comites. Haec dignitas, haec vires, magnus femea electorum juvenum globo circumdata, in pace decus, in bello praefidium. . . . Cum ventum in aciem, turpe principi virtutem vinci, turpe comitant Virtutem principis non adaequare. . . . Illum defendere, tueri, sua quoque fortia facta gloriae ejus assignare, praecipuum
f sacramentum est. Principes pro victoria pugnant; comites pro principe. Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 12, 13, 14.

(8) Of the notion that tribes were the vassals of tribes, I have exhibited the most convincing proofs in another treatise. Hist. Dissert. concerning the Antiq. of the Eng. Consit. part. 2. As the subject, however, is highly curious and important, I shall here offer some additional observations concerning it.

The great bond of the confederacies, and the attachments of the states of the Gauls and Germans, was the land assigned by a superior community to an inferior one. In consequence of this assignment, the latter owed service in war to the former, and was entitled to its protection. In the language of Caesare, it was the client tribe. While land was yet the property of nations, and unconnected with individuals, the idea was natural, and almost unavoidable. Ariovistus, a prince of a German community, having, with his chiefs and retainers, made a conquest in Gaul, the territory of the vanquished people became the property of his nation; and, it was about to bestow a large tract of the acquisition on the Harudes, under the burden of their military aid or assistance, when Caesare interfered in the Gaulic affairs. Caesare de Bell. Gall. lib. 1. c. 35—46.

The idea of tribes in union, without their mutually furnishing protection and assistance, and without the medium of a grant of land, could not be conceived by the German and Gaulic nations. The client or vassal tribes of Ariovistus, were the Marcomani, Triboci, Vangiones, Harudes, Nemetes, and Sedufii. Caesare, de Bell. Gall. lib. 1. c. 51. The Ublai, at one period, were the vassal tribe of the Suevi. Ib. lib. 4. c. 3. In an after-period, when the Romans imitated the manners of the Gauls and Germans, they were assigned land on the banks of the Rhine, under the obligation of military service. 'Super ipsum Rheni ripam ' collocati, ut arcerent, non ut custodiretur.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 28. Caesare, at the request of the Eudul, permitted the Boii to remain in Gaul; and they became the clients or confederates of that people, who assigned
them land on their confines. "Boios, petentibus Æduis, quod egregia virtute erant, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concestit; quibus illi agros déderunt." De Bell. Gall. lib. 1. c. 28. The extent of land allotted by a superior community to an inferior one, was proportioned to the numbers and the valor of the latter. And, it was this way of thinking which actuated the Helvetii, when they said, that their territories were not suited to their populousness and military glory. "Pro multitudine autem hominum, & pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis, augustos se fines habere arbitrabantur." Id. lib. 1. c. 2.

Thus, the state of land among the Gaulic and German nations directed their political condition. This circumstance escaped not the Romans; and the use made of its knowledge by the Emperors, though little attended to, is worthy of remark. To a body of the Vandals, Constantine, with a view to the aid of their arms, assigned a portion of Pannonia. The assignment of land by the Romans to the Burgundians, that they might assist them in opposing the Visigoths, gave rise to the Burgundian empire in Gaul. And Justinian granted the lands and possessions of the Ostrogoths in Pannonia to the Longobards, under the burden of their defending that country against the Gepidae, the Heruli, and other barbarous nations. Jornand. de Reb. Get. c. 22. Cassiodor. Chron. Procop. lib. 3.

Amidst a multitude of examples, to the same purpose, which might be produced, it is proper to take notice of the monarchy of the Franks. Different nations, overpowered by the Franks, became parts of their monarchy, by receiving possessions from them, and acknowledging their superiority. For the lands and protection afforded them, they gave allegiance and service. In other respects they acted under their own dukes or princes, and under their own institutions. I speak of the principalities or dukedoms of Bavaria, Aquitain, and Suabia. The Bojoarici, Bojarii, or Boii, for so the Bavarians are called in writers of the middle ages, were conquered by the Franks, and, accepting lands from them, acknowledged their superiority. An old historian, recording
recording this transaction, has these words: 'In bellis auxilio Franci sunt Boi; eodem pro amicis & hostibus habeant; ceterum suis institutis ac moribus liberi vivant.' Aventinus, Annal. Boior. lib. 3. This connexion or vassalage is even expressed in their laws. LL. Baivoar. tiv 2. c. 1. ap. Lindenbrog. p. 404. Such also was the case of the Dukes of Aquitain and Suabia. Under the Franconian kings of the first race, they owed fidelity and military service in war, for the lands they enjoyed, and yet governed in their own dominions. These things mark the attachment of nations to their ancient usages, and illustrate the idea that communities were first the vassals of communities.

What is not inquisitive, one of the greatest difficulties in developing the history of the barbaric tribes, has its source in these connexions I have mentioned. The inferior, or vassal tribes, are often meant and recorded under the names of the superior ones. Thus, under the general appellation of Gotthi, there are included the Thuringi, Gepidae, Pucini, Scirri, and other tribes. The historical confusions that were necessarily to arise from this practice are many, and often not to be disentangled.

(9) It is observable, that the Old German states affected, from grandeur, to have around them a vast extent of vassal territory. 'Una ex parte a Suevis circiter millia patruum DC ari vacare dicuntur.' Caesar, de Bell. Gall. lib. 4. c. 2. 'Civitatis maxima laus est quam larillimas circum se vaftatis finibus solitudines habere.' Id. lib. 6. c. 22. 'Bella cum finitimis gerunt, ut quae circa ipsos jacent vassa sint.' Mela, lib. 3.

What is remarkable, after land was connected with individuals, and when chiefs distributed portions of their possessions to their followers, they affected also vassals of this kind. The Lord of a manor, after having assigned to his servants a tract of ground for the maintenance of his house and hospitality, gave out other divisions to his vassals and tenants, for the support of his political greatness; and these purposes being answered, a large proportion of territory remained often unemployed by him. This vassal dominion gave an
idee of his power, and served to excite, in the stranger, a sentiment of terror. On this tract of land, the inhabitants of the hamlet, connected with his castle, were tempted to feed their cattle. In the course of time, he lost all connexion with it. Their connexion was recent and in use. Hence common pasture and common.

I will venture another conjecture. It was, perhaps, from the idea of magnificence attending the possession of a vast portion of uncultivated territory, more than for the purposes of hunting, that the kings of Europe affected, of old, to have extensive forests. A deer-park is still flattering to the magnificence of the rich, in proportion to its extensiveness; though hunting be no amusement of the proprietor.

(10) It has puzzled the learned to discover the nation of the barbarians which first gave a beginning to fiefs. No inquiry could be more frivolous. In all of them they must have appeared about the same period. And they prevailed in all of them in consequence of the similarity of their situation on their conquests, and in consequence of their being governed by the same customs. It is not, therefore, to the principle of imitation that their universality is to be ascribed.

The annals of France make mention of fiefs in the age of Childebert. The Longobards, at an early period, introduced them into Italy; and the customs and laws which relate to them seem to have advanced rapidly among this people. 

Giannone, Hist. of Naples, book 4. sect. 3. In England, there is little doubt that the feudal law was known in the Saxon times; and on this subject I refer, with pleasure, to what has been lately advanced by Mr. Whitaker, in his History of Manchester; a book valuable for deep learning, original thought, and uncommon ingenuity.

In Spain, the introduction of the feudal tenures preceded the devastations of the Saracens or Moors, which began in the year 710. Among the Goths, who established the monarchy of Spain, lands were granted for service and attachment; and the receiver was the retainer of the grantor. He
was said to be in patrocinio; and, if he refused his service, he forfeited his grant. It also appears, that the retainer, or vassal, swore fealty to his patron or lord. And it was on this scheme that their militia was regulated. LL. Wisigoth. llib. 5. tit. 3. l. 4. tit. 7. l. 20.

The Wisigothic laws were first published by the celebrated Pithacus, and are chiefly to be valued on account of their high antiquity. But how they came to survive the Moorish conquests, is an incident which I cannot explain. They served as the mine, and gave materials for the code of Spanish jurisprudence, termed the forum judicium, or the suero iusgo; a circumstance which seems to prove their authenticity, and which the learned Mr. Barrington must have forgot, when he conceived the latter to be the most ancient collection of laws in Europe. Observations on the Statutes, 3d edit. p. 9.

SECTION II.

(1) TERRA . . . . pectorum foecunda, sed plerumque improcera: Ne armenti quidem suus honor, aut gloria frontis: Numerò gaudent: Eaeque folae & gratissimas opesunt. Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 5.

(2) My Lord Kaims ascribes to the meanness of women, and to the disgrace in which they are held, their want of property in rude times. They appear, notwithstanding, to be in high estimation in such times; and their poverty, we see, or their want of property, is no mark or consequence of their meanness and disgrace; but a result of the nature of things. Sketches, vol. 1. p. 203.

(3) The eldest son, it would appear, came in place of the father, and continued the family. 'Inter familiam, says Tacitus, 'et penates, & jura successionum, equi traduntur: & Excipit filius, non ut cetera maximus natu, sed prout ferox bello & melior.' De Mor. Germ. c. 32. This testimony in favor of the eldest son, and the right of primogeniture, is the more strong, as being included in an exception to the general rule. I know that Sir Henry Spelman,
in his Glossary (1), Mr. Harris, in his History of Kent (2), Mr. Lambard, in his Perambulation of the same county (3), and Mr. Barrington, in his Observations on the Statutes (4), have given it as their opinion, that, in Germany, the fons succeeded equally to the father; and it is common to account, in that way, for the origin of the custom of gavel-kind (5), which prevailed in Kent, and in other counties of England. The words, however, of Tacitus already cited are a demonstration of the impropriety of these notions.

It is true, notwithstanding, that the authors under remark found or rely upon another passage of the same writer; but I conceive that the sense of it must have escaped them. The passage is as follows. *Haerdes succesorserque sui cuique liber: Et nullum testamentum: Si liberi non sunt, proximus gradus in possellione, frater, patru, avunculi.* De Mor. Germ. c. 20. Here, in reality, even allowing that the Germans had been acquainted with a property in land, which they constantly suppose, there is no mention of the equal partition of it. The children must have succeeded singly and in course; in defect of these, the brothers; and, on the failure of them, the uncles.

This passage, and the former, throw mutually a light to one another; and, from the consideration of both, I think it clear, that the meaning I impute to them is justly to be inferred.

A difficulty, however, more knotty presents itself. As land was among these nations the property of the state, to what does Tacitus allude in the passage before us? Conjectures are to be hazarded where proofs are wanting. In general, I should fancy, he must refer to moveables; and, perhaps, he may allude to the German house and the enclosure connected with it. *Colunt discreti ac diversi ut fons, ut campus, ut*

(3) P. 684. (4) p. 115, 3d Edit.
\textit{nemus placuit} . . . \textit{Suum quifque domum spatio circumdat.} Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 16. At least, it is not unnatural to think, that the cabin and its enclosure, as the ideas of property evolved, might be considered as appertaining more peculiarly to individuals, and that thence continuing in their possession, they might go to their posterity.

It was thus in other rude communities. Among the Hindoos, it appears, by very curious laws, that the landed property first acquired by individuals, was what is termed the glebe-lands, houses, and orchards. \textit{Code of Gentoo laws}, \textit{cb. 3}. In Oraheite, and in Eastern Island, or Davis’s Land, there were plantations laid out by line, of which the beauty struck Captain Cook. These, he conjectures, were the private property of the chiefs. \textit{Voyage round the World}, \textit{vol. 1. p. 294}. His conjecture is very solid. These spots correspond to the enclosure of the German house, and to the glebe-lands of the Gentoo.

(4) ‘Dotei non uxor marito, sed uxor maritus offert.’ Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 18. This remarkable usage continued after the German nations had made conquests, and is everywhere to be met with in their laws.

‘Non amplius unusquisque in puellae vel mulieris nomine dotis titulo conferatur vel confribatur, quam quod decimam partem rerum suarum esse confiterit.’ LL. Wifgoth. \textit{lib. 3. tit. 1. l. 5}.

‘Quia mulieres, quibus dudum concessum fuerat de suis dotibus judicare, quod vulgent, quaedam reperiantur, fi pretis filiiis vel nepotibus, eadem dotes illis conferre, cum quibus confiterit nequiter eas vixisse: Ideo necesse est illus exinde percipere commodum pro quibus creandis fuerat assumptum conjugium. Denique constituentes decernimus, ut de doti sua mulier habens filios vel nepotes, seu causa mercedis ecclesiis vel libertis conferre, sine cuique voluerit, non amplius quam de quarta parte potestatem habeat. Nam tres partes legitimis filiis aut nepotibus, feu sit unus sine forisitant plures, abisce dubiae relictura est. De tota interim doti, tunc facere quid voluerit, erit mulieres potestas, quando nullum legitimum filium, filiamve, nepotem vel
neptem superstitem reliquerit. Verum tamen faeminas, quas contigerit duobus viris aut amplius nubere, atque ex eis filios procreare, non eis licitum erit dotem ab alio marito acceptam, filiis aut nepotibus ex alio viro genitis dare: Sed unusquisque filius filiave, nepos aut neptis, ex ipsa linea procreati, dotem quam avus aut pater illorum concesserat, post mulieris obitum per omnia consecuturi sunt.' LL. Wisgoth. lib. 4. tit. 5. l. 2. ap. Lindenbrog.

'Mulier si ad alias nuptias transfieri, omnia perdat: Dote tamen sua quam a marito suo accepta, quamdiu vixerit, utatur, filio proprietate servata.' LL. Burgund. tit. 62. l. 2. See farther LL. Wisgoth, lib. 3. tit. 2. l. 8. hb. 5. tit. 2. l. 4. LL. Ripuar. tit. 37. LL. Saxon. tit. 7. LL. Longobard. lib. 1. tit. 4. The curious reader may also consult the forms or writings which constituted the dos, or dower. Form. Solem. ap. Baluz. tom. 2. See Appendix, No. 1.

In England, the doctrines and history of the dos are to be seen in Gianvill, Braddon, Britton, in the book called Flea, and in Littleton. 'Dos, or dower,' says my Lord Coke, 'in the common law, is taken for that portion of lands or tenements which the wife hath for terme of her life of the lands or tenements of her husband after his decease, for the sustenance of her selfe, and the nurture and education of her children.' 1. Instit. p. 31. It is curious to find in the woods of Germany, a rite or custom that makes a figure in all the laws of Europe.

My Lord Kims, whom I am ashamed to contradict so often, has strangely misunderstood this subject. ' In Germany,' says he, 'when Tacitus wrote, very few traces remained of polygamy. Severa illic matrimonia, nec ullam morum partem magis laudaveris; nam prope foli barbarorum singulis uxoribus contenti sunt, exceptis admodum paucis, qui non libidine, sed ob nobilitatem, plurimis nuptiis ambiuntur. When polygamy was in that country fo little practisfied, we may be certain, the purchasing wives did not remain in vigor. And Tacitus accordingly, mentioning the general rule, dotem non uxor marito, sed
uxori maritus offert, explains it away by observing, that
the only dos given by the bridegroom, were marriage-
presents, and that he at the same time received marriage-

It would pain me to open up, with minutenefs, all the
mistakes which are crowded into this passage. I shall just
glance at them. Polygamy, in fact, never prevailed among
the Germans; and of this, the treatife of Tacitus, and the
laws of the barbarians after their conquests, are the most
striking and decisive proofs. See Ob. 1. Sec. 7. Note 14.
Neither were women bought in Germany, nor does Tacitus
affirm, that the dos consisted of marriage-presents. The
interchange of presents by the married couple and the dos,
were separate and distinct. The intention of the former I
have already explained. See Ob. 1. Sec. 3. Note 2. What
the latter was, I have just now laid; and I appeal to the
authorities which support my notion.

The source of all these errors is, the idea entertained
and inculcated by this eminent writer, that the women, in
rude times, are of so little consideration, that they are
objects of trafic. Hence he conceived, that the dos must
be the purchase-money of the wife. That it was not so, we
have seen; but, as the opinion has been pretty generally
received, and has got the sanction of Professor Millar, as
well as that of his Lordship, it is proper to consider its
propriety with some attention.

Though it everywhere appears, from the examination
of the barbaric laws, and from the books of the earliest
lawyers, that the dos or dower was the provision allotted
for the maintenance of the wife, it is not to be denied,
that, in ancient legal monuments, there occur the expres-
sions donatio nuptialis, pretium uxoris, & pretium dotis.
And these, I perceive, have contributed to induce Mr.
Millar to go into the fancy, that anciently, in Europe,
the dos was the price, or purchase-money of the wife. Ob-
ervations on the distinction of rank, p. 30. 2. edit.
If, however, I am not very widely mistaken, these expres-
sions apply, in no case, to the purchase-money of the wife;
but expressthe provision made for her, in the event of the
death of the husband. This, I think, appears from the laws
of the barbarians.

'Si qua mulier duetaxat Burgundia post mariti mortem
ad secundas aut tertias nuptias, ut adsolet hieri, forisae
transferit, & filios habuerit, ex omni conjugio, dona-
tionem nuptiaeae dum advivit usu fructu possidet: Poat
eius mortem ad unumquemque filium, quod pater ejus
dederat, revertatur: Ita ut mater nec donandi, nec ven-
dendi, nec alienandi de his rebus quas in donatione
eae nuptiaeae accept, habeat potestatem.' LL. Burgund.
tit. 24.

It is said of one Folco, that he gave to his wife Gerlina
all he had; 'Omnia sua propter pretium in mane quando
surrexit.' Giannone, Hist. of Naples, vol. i. p. 274.
But this was not the price or value of the wife. It was
the morgengabe, or morning-present, about which there is
so much in the barbaric laws, and of which the extravagance
was so great, that regulations were made to repress it.

As to the expression, pretium dotis, we meet with it in
the following ordinance: 'Si puella ingenua ad quemlibet
ingenuum venerit ea conditione, ut eum sibi marium
acquire, prius cum puellae parentibus conloquatur; & si
obtinuerit, ut eam uxorem habere possit, pretium dotis
parentibus ejus, ut justum eft, impleatur.' LL. Wifigotb.
lib. 3. tit. 2. l. 8. The dower, it seems, was at times given
to the parent, or to the relation of the woman, to be kept
for her use. This is fully explained by the regulation which
follows: 'Dotei puellae traditam pater exigendi vel con-
servandi ipsi puellae habeat potestatem. Quod si pater aut
mater defuerint, tunc fratres vel proximi parentes, dotem
quam solvereint, ipsi conforori suae ad integrum restituant.'
LL. Wifigotb. lib. 3. tit. 1. l. 6. ap. Lindenbrog.

I know that the custom of presenting money at marriages
came to prevail among the German and Gothic nations,
and among the Franks more particularly. In Fredegarius,
for example, we read this description of the espousals of
Cotildis: 'Legati offerentes solidum & denarium, ut mos
IN EUROPE.

' est Francorum, eam partibus Clodovei spontant.' Geoff. Franc. c. 18. Let us not, however, be deceived. Here no purchase was made. The money presented was only the fymbol of a contract. This is illustred by the Arra nuptialis of the Wisigoths. *A die iuxta huius legis decernimus, ut cum inter eos qui dispofandii sunt, five inter corum parentes, aut furtale propinquos, pro filiorum nuptis coram tellibus praeceperit, definitio, & annulus arrarum * nomine datus fuerit vel acceptus, quamvis scripturae non intercurrant, nullatenus promiffio violeatur, cum qua datus * est annulus, & definitio facta coram tellibus.' LL. Wisigoth. lib. 3. tit. 1. l. 3.

But what refutes, in the moft decisive manner, the notion that the wife was purchased with the money of the husband, is the following peculiarity. If a free man married his slave, and intended that his children by her should succeed to his fortune, it was neceffary that he should make her a present of her liberty. And, what is remarkable, one of the methods of making her free, was the very act which is talked of as buying the property of the wife; it was the affigning her a dower or a morgengabe. *S quis ancillam suam propriam matrimoniiare voluerit fibi ad uxorom, fit ei licentia : Tamen debeat eam liberam thingare, & lic facere liberam, quod est Widerboram, & legitimam per garathinx, id est, per libertatis donationem; vel per GRATUITEM donatio- nem, id est morgengabe; tunc intelligatur effe libera & legima uxor, & filii qui ex ea nati fuerint legitimi haeredes efficiantur.' LL. Longobard. lib. 2. tit. 1. l. 8.

Among the Longobards the dower and the morgengabe came to be synonymous, and were fixed at the fourth part of the substance of the husband †. LL. Longobard. lib. 2. tit. 4.

* Arrhes or arras in France, earnest in England, and arles in Scotland, will express the money advanced in token that a bargain is concluded.
† A very singular exception, to the doctrine I advance in this note, to be found in the records of England, and I am surprised that it has escaped the learned industry of the writers whom I venture to oppose. I truth, notwithstanding, that my general conclusion is not to be affected by it. The case, however, is so odd, that I will give it to the reader in the words of my author.
I might confirm these remarks by attending to the manners and customs of other nations. Among the inhabitants, for example, of Hindooftan, while they were in a similar state of manners with the barbaric tribes, the ordinances and usages in matrimonial concerns, have a striking conformity with those I have now described. This is evident from the code of Gentoo laws *

"The woman's property," say these laws, "is whatever she receives during the ayämmi sbadee, the days of marriage.

When a woman dies, then, whatever effects she acquired during the ayämmi sbadee, even though she hath a son living, shall first go to her unmarried daughter; if there is but one unmarried daughter, she shall obtain the whole; if there are several unmarried daughters, they all shall have equal shares."

Here there is clearly the dower of the barbarians, and its destination on the decease of the wife, in a given or

"John Camois," says Camden, "son of Lord Ralph Camois, (a precedent not to be paralleled in that or our own age), out of his own free will (I speak from the parliament - rolls themselves, Parl. 30. Ed. I.) gave and demised his own wife, Margaret, daughter and heir of John de Gaidelberg, to Sir William Painel, knight; and to the same [William] voluntarily gave, granted, released, and quitclaimed all the goods and chattels which she had, or otherwise hereafter might have, and also whatever was in his hands, of the aforesaid Margaret's goods and chattels, with their appurtenances. So as neither himself, nor any other in his name, might, nor for ever ought to claim or challenge any interest in the aforesaid Margaret, from henceforth, or in the goods or chattels of the said Margaret: Which is, what the ancients said in one word, ut omnia sua facium habeas, that she should take away with her all that was her's. By occasion of which grant, when she demanded her dower in the manor of Torpull, an estate of John Camois, her first husband, there commenced a memorable suit. But she was cast in it, and sentence passed, that she ought to have no dower from thence.' Britannia, vol. 1. p. 205.

Even this example, however, of the sale of a wife, confirms the idea I inculcate as to the dower or dower.

* Or Ordinations of the Pundits, from a Persian translation made from the original, written in the Sanscrit language. London, printed in the year 1776.
Supposed situation. There is something more. For the woman, among the Hindoos, as well as among our barbarians, might acquire other property beside the dower, during the days of marriage. This is illustrated by the following regulations.

The woman’s property among the Hindoos is also whatever she may receive from any person, as she is going to her husband’s house, or coming from thence.

Whatever her husband may at any time have given her; whatever she has received, at any time, from a brother; and whatever her father and mother may have given her.

Whatever jewels or wearing apparel she may have received from any person.’

Here we have, obviously, the marriage-presents of the relations and friends, as among the barbarians; and, in the gifts of the husband, there is a counter-part to the morgengabe of our forefathers, which is still farther explained by the following circumstance.

The form of marriage among the Hindoos, termed asbore, is described to be ‘when a man gives money to a father and mother, on his marrying their daughter, and also gives something to the daughter herself.’

Here there is not only the dos or dower, to be kept by the relations for the use of the bride, but the morgengabe, or morning present, in the disposal of the bride herself; peculiarities which constituted the general characteristics of these transactions among the barbarians.

This coincidence is probably to be found in all nations, in certain ages or periods of their history. It is an evidence of the uniformity of the manners of man in the most distinct and distant regions; and it marks strongly the importance of women in the early times of society and civilization. Code of Gentoo Laws, eb. 2.

It would be irksome to prosecute this subject at greater length. Law and history uniformly concur to inform us, that anciently, in Europe, the dos was the provision allotted to the wife, and not the price paid for her. The customs of
other nations offer their testimony to the same purpose. And
natural affection and reason, the generosity of manners in
rude times, and the limited ideas of property which then
prevail, all join to support the conclusion. Yielding to the
united force of these particulars, I scruple not to contradict
positions which have the sanction of distinguished names.

($) In the process of time, regular forms or acts were
invented for the constitution of the dower. Four methods
of the dower prevailed more particularly over Europe, and,
on that account, it is proper to recite and to explain them.
These were the dower ad ostium ecclesiae, the dower ex
assensu patris, the dower by the custom of particular places,
and the dower de la plus belle. And from these peculiarities,
also, there results the most clear and decisive proof, that
the dos was not the purchase-money of the wife, but the
provision for her maintenance.

1. The dower ad ostium ecclesiae took place when the
bridegroom, having come to the door of the church or
monastery where he was to be married, and having plighted
his faith to the woman, and received hers, made public
mention of the quantity and proportion of the land he de-
signed for her dower. In consequence of this transaction,
the might take possession, on his death, of the provision
thus allotted to her.

2. The dower ex assensu patris took place when the son
endowed his wife, with consent of his father, in the lands
to which he was to succeed. In this case, the wife, on the
demise of the husband, was to enjoy the portion assigned
to her in the estate of the father.

3. By the custom of some counties, cities, and boroughs,
the woman had, for her dower, the half of her husband’s
possessions, or the whole.

4. The dower de la plus belle had place when a person, for
example, being seized of forty acres of land, of which he
held twenty by knight-service, and twenty in socage, took
a wife, had a son, and dying, left him under age. The
lord of whom the land was held in knight-service, took pos-
session of the twenty acres, as guardian of the minor in
chivalry; and the mother entered into the enjoyment of the other twenty, as guardian in socage. In this situation, the mother might bring a writ of dower against the guardian in chivalry, to be endowed of the tenements holden in knight-service. But the guardian in chivalry, pleading in his defence, that she is guardian in socage, might require from the court that she be adjudged to endow herself in the fairest of the tenements she possesses. And, if she could not show that the property in socage was unequal to the purpose of the dower, the guardian in chivalry retained the lands holden of him during the minority of the heir. The woman, then assembling her neighbours, took possession, in their presence, of the fairest part of the socage-lands, to hold them during her life, under the title of the dower de la plus belle. Littleton, ch. 5. The Commentaries of Sir Edward Coke, and Montf. Hotot, and the Glossaries.

It is thus, that the simple regulation, mentioned by Tacitus, grew in time various and complicated. It even yet makes a figure in our laws. It is to be seen in the provisions they hold out for the widow. And, it may teach us to suspect, that enactments, which appear to be deeply founded in legislative wisdom, are often nothing more than improvements of the usages which natural reason and expediency have struck out in a barbarous age.

(6) The laws of the different nations of the barbarians vary in the dower or provision they ordained. The Longobardic laws made it the fourth part of the estate of the husband. LL. Longobard. lib. 2. tit. 4. l. 1. The Wisigothic constitutions made it the tenth part of the substance of the husband. LL. Wisigoth. ap. Lindenbrog. p. 53. And, in England, the legal dower consisted of the third part of the lands or tenements of the husband. Coke on Littleton, p. 31.

A learned and ingenious writer has observed, that, in England, there are no traces of the morgengabe. Observations on the Statutes, p. 9, 3d edit. This I suspect is a mistake. The morgengabe is mentioned in the laws of Canute, and in those of Henry I. LL. Canut. par. 2, c. 71. LL. Hen. I. c. 70. ap. Wilkins, p. 144. 267. The pin-money of modern times, it is probable, grew out of this usage.

A peculiar kind of matrimonial engagement was called matrimonium ad morganaticam, which is to be distinguished from the rite I now mention. This form of marriage did not permit of dower, and the wife had only a morgengabe or present. It was intended for the benefit of men of rank, who had lost their wives, but had children. In consequence of it, they could legally connect themselves with low women, who, receiving and being entitled to no dower, could not burden their estates. The issue of such connexions had no power of succession, and inherited no dignity. But provisions might be made for them. It was out of this source, chiefly, that the church of old was supplied. Men of influence could there deposit, most securely, the spawn of their concubinage. And it still is, and ever will be, wherever it is wealthy, an asylum for this produce, and for the younger sons of noble families.

This scheme of legal concubinage is prevalent, at this hour, in Germany; and women, married after this odd fashion, are termed left-handed wives; because it is a part of the ceremony for the bridegroom to give his left hand to the bride. Of such connexions, as in ancient times, the issue are bastards, as to inheritance, and bear neither the name nor the arms of the father. Baron von Lownen on Nobility.

Besides the morgengabe, or the present by the husband, it was common, at marriages, for the relations, and other persons connected with the parties, to express their satis-
faction by making gifts. 'Gaudet muneraibus,' is a part of the characteristic description of the ancient Germans by Tacitus. 'Franci vero,' says Gregory of Tours, when speaking of the marriage of the daughter of Chilperic, multa munera obtulerunt; ali aurum, ali argentum, nonnulli equos, plectique vestimenta, & unusquisque ut potuit, donatiun dedit.' Hist. lib. 6. c. 45.

This custom pervaded all ranks of society. And the money or penny weddings which still prevail in small villages and hamlets are a remain of it. What, in one age, disgraces not the palace of the prince, is to be confined in another to the hovel of the rustic.

(8) The powers over a morgengabe, mentioned in the text, would not probably arise all at once, but gradually. The two former, I imagine, would be long known before the latter; and extensive powers over a morgengabe, consisting of money, would sooner be exercised, than over one consisting of land. Of a morgengabe in land, there is the following disposition or bequest by Gertrude, a German lady of high rank, in the year 1273.


The clergy, by besieging the beds of the dying, procured many legacies of this kind; and their rapacity, though shocking and abominable, contributed to hasten the powers of the alienation of property.

(9) 'Habeat ipsa mulier morgengab, & quod de parentibus ejus adduxerit, id el, Phaderphium.' LL. Longobard. lib. 2. tit. 1. l. 4. See also LL. Alaman. tit. 56. LL. Wisigoth. lib. 3. tit. 1. l. 5. LL. Longobard. lib. 1. tit. 9. l. 12.

In England, and in other countries, the term Phaderphium, which signifies paternal estate, was unknown; but
the term *maritagium* implied in them the prevalence of the custom. *Maritagium* dicitur id quod viro datur cum uxore; *dotem* enim appellamus Angli, non quod vir accipit, sed quod femina.* Spelm. Gloss. p. 405. In the *Formulare Anglicanum*, there are preserved ancient feoffments of land to the husbands of the daughters and sisters of the grantors, in which *maritagium* is the term employed as expressive of the estate of the woman. See Appendix No. 2.

The following law of the Longobards, on the subject of the portion, or estate of the woman, seems to be very curious. *Vidua quae in domo patris aut fratis regressa est, habeat fibi morgangab & methium: De faderio autem, id est, de alio dono, quantum pater aut frater dederit ei, quando ad maritum ambulaverit, mittat in confusum cum alius fororibus.* LL. Longob. lib. 2. tit. 14. l. 15.

This commixtion of the portions of the women, is treated by Littleton, in his tenures, lib. 3. ch. 2. But nothing of the history, or the philosophy of the custom, appears there. A woman who had been married, and had received her *faderium*, might, on the death of her ancestor, if the portions of her sisters were to prove higher, make a commixtion of the tenements, and lay claim to an equal share. If they were to prove less, she might retain her *faderium*. This commixtion was called *Hotchpot*, from a dish of that name. *Littleton*, p. 167. *Hotchpot*, says Cowel, 'is a word that cometh out of the lowe countries, where *Hutsplit* signifieth flesh cut into pretie pieces, and sōden with herbs and roots.' *The Interpreter*, Edit. 1607. This dish is still in particular esteem in Scotland. *Littleton*, as cited above, makes *hotchpot*, in its natural meaning, to signify a pudding composed of different ingredients.

The estate brought by the woman to the husband, when a full infeudation, was called *Maritagium liberum*; when otherwise, it was *maritagium servitio obnoxium*. Glanvill, *Regiam Majestatem*, lib. 2. *Bračton*, lib. 2. *Fleta*, lib. 3. *Littleton*, lib. 1.

(10) The *dos*, or *dower*, which had figured so much, was thus to be gradually swallowed up in the *jointure*; and, in
In this situation, it came to express the estate brought to the husband by the wife. This circumstance is well illustrated by the following example in Muratori, an. 1203.


Elem. Jur. Germ. p. 120.

I pretend not to fix the precise time when dot assumed this sense. The meaning of words, varying perpetually with the fluctuation of manners and the intermixture of nations, gives an almost impenetrable darkness to the middle ages. The pale inquirer is often to forgo an interpretation he had chosen, and on which he had built. Language is to deceive him. He is to attend to customs and usages; yet customs and usages prevail for a time, are lost, and start up again. He is involved, and wanders in the double gloom of antiquity and barbarism.

(11) 'Dulciissima filia mea illa, ego ille. Diuturna sede impia inter nos confuetudo tenerur, ut de terra paterna forores cum fratribus portionem non habeant. Sed ego perpendens hanc impietatem, sic mihi a Deo aequaliter donati estis filii, ita & a me sit aequaliter diligendi, ut de rebus meis post meum disseculum aequaliter gaudeatis.' Charta ap. Marculp. Form. lib. 2. c. 12.

'Inter Burgundiones id volumus custodiri, ut, si quis filium non reliquerit, in loco filii filia in patris matrisque haereditate succedat.' LL. Burgund. tit. 14. l. 1.


(12) There are frequent examples of ladies exercising the civil rights and the jurisdictions of fiefs. Of courts held by them, and of decrees they pronounced, there are curious evidences in Muratori, Antiq. Ital. Medii Ævi, vol. 1, p. 489, 614, 738, 970, 971.

In a learned work, entitled, le Droit public de France éclairci par les monuments de l'antiquité, we meet the following notices, which are authenticated from records.

Mathilde Comtesse d'Artois eut séance & voix délibérative comme les autres Pairs de France, dans le procès criminel fait à Robert Comte de Flandres.

Jeanne fille de Raymond Comte de Toulouse prêta le serment, & fit la foi & hommage au Roi de cette pairie.


(13) The ornaments of the mother went early by succession, to the daughters; and, from the laws which prove this peculiarity, it is also to be inferred, that the passion of the women for drefs was keen and strong.

"Oramenta & vestimenta matronalia ad filias, absque ullo fratris fratrumque confortio, pertinebunt." LL. Burgund. tit. 51. l. 7.

"Mater moriens filio terram, mancipia, pecuniam dimittat; filiae vero spolia colli, id est, murenas, nuscas, monilia,
* inaures, vestes, armillas, vel quidquid ornamenti proprii
* videbatur habuisse." LL. Angl. & Werin. tit. 6. l. 6.
(14) 'Si quis proper libidinem liberae manum injecterit,
* aut virginis seu uxori alterius, quod Bajuvarii hortigift vocant,
* cum vi. solid. componat.' LL. Bavoor. tit. 7. l. 3.
* 'Si indumenta super genicula elevaverit quod humiliorum
* vocant, cum xii. solid. componat.' Ibid. I. 4.
* 'Si autem discrimina ejecerit de capite, Wultworf
* dicunt, vel virginis libidinosæ crines de capite extraxerit,
* cum xii. sol. componat.' Ibid. I. 5.
* 'Si qua liberam faemina virgo vade in itinere suo inter duas
* villas, & obviavit eam aquis & per raptum denueat
* caput ejus, cum vi. sol. componat. Et si ejus vestimenta
* levaverit, ut uisque ad genicula denudet, cum vi. sol.
* componat: Et si eam denuдаватьt ut genitalia ejus appareant,
* vel posteriora, cum xii. sol. componat.' LL. Alam. 
* tit. 58. l. 1.
* 'Si quis liberam faeminam per verenda ejus comprehens-
* erit iii. solid. componat, & duos solidos pro freda.' 
* LL. Frison. tit. 22. l. 89. See farther LL. Sal. tit. 22. LL. 
* Longobard. lib. 2. tit. 55. l. 16.

One must smile at the simplicity of these regulations. They
are proofs, notwithstanding, of the respect entertained for
 chastity. They express, immodestly, the delicacies of a rude,
but refining people. They offend virtue, in the very act of
promoting it.

Similar institutions or regulations, may be seen in the code
of Gentoo laws; but, as they are expressed with a still
greater freedom of language, I avoid to give any examples
of them. Ch. 19.

SECTION III.

(1) 'Principes regionum atque pagorum inter suas jus
dicunt, controversiasque minuant.' Caesar, de Bell.
Gall. lib. 6. c. 22. See also Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 12.

These principes became lords or barons, after the conquests
of the barbarians, and, in this last state, continued and imploved the privileges they had previously possessed. *Dissert. concerning the Antiquity of the English Constitution, Part 3.* In Germany, there was probably no appeal from their decisions. For, in the German communities, it is said, there was no common magistrate. ’Nullus communis est magistratus.’ *Caesar,* *ibid.* The judging, without appeal, was exercised in all the Gothic kingdoms by the higher division of the nobility. They had the *high* and the *low* justice, the justice *baut & bat, ait & bafte.*

It would lead to detail’s improper in this place, if I should attempt to explain the origin and growth of the different privileges of the nobles. But I may hint my surprize, that these topics, so full of curiosity, have so little attracted our antiquaries and lawyers. The jurisdiction and powers exercised by the great, form a remarkable step in the progress of the European governments. Loyseau, indeed, and many French writers, make an easy discussion of this matter, by affecting to treat them as encroachments on monarchy, or on the rights of kings. And Dr. Robertson has given his sanction to this opinion. *Hist. of Charles V.* vol. 1. p. 60.

A perfection, however, of governments, or of regal jurisdiction, is thus supposed, in the moment of its rise; a circumstance, contradictory alike to natural reason and to story. Government is not perfect all at once: It attains not maturity but by slow degrees. The privileges of the nobles were prior to its perfect state. In fact, it was by the abolition of these that it grew to strength and ripeness. The monarchies of Europe were completed, when the high privileges of the nobility were destroyed. But these privileges were exercised before government was understood, and before kings had ascertained their prerogatives.

(2) An old writer, speaking of the greater barons or lords, has these words. ’In omnibus tenentibus suis omnem ab antiquo legalem habuere jussitiam, videlicet, ferrum, folium, fueras, & familia.’ *Gerovagius Dorotern. an. 1195.*


’Proditori & transfugae,’ says *Tacitus* of the old Germans.
arboribus suspendunt. Ignavos & imbelles, & corpore infames cerno ac palude, injecta insuper crate, mergent.' De Mor. Germ. c. 12. This description has, doubtless, a reference to the German nobles or chiefs who presided in the courts of the cantons and districts into which a tribe or community was divided. And, does it not call to one's mind the pit and gallows, or the right to determine de alto & basso of the feudal nobility?

The power of mercy, or the pardoning of a criminal after sentence has been pronounced against him, is a curious circumstance in criminal jurisdiction. I should think, that it was exerted by the lord or baron in his dominions before it could be exercised in a general manner by the sovereign. The connexion between the lord and the vassal was intimate; and the felony of the latter being chiefly an injury to the former, it might naturally enough be imagined, that he was entitled not only to forgive the offence, but to suspend the punishment. To his proper vassals, the sovereign might also act in the same way. It was thus, in fact, in the Anglo-Saxon period of our history. For the king had then only the power of pardoning crimes as to himself. But, on what principle did the sovereign begin to exert the general prerogative of pardoning criminals, every where through the state, after condemnation? The question is important, and might be argued with great show, and much ingenuity. But the narrow boundaries within which I must confine my remarks, admit not of either. I can only hint at my idea, and must not wait to inflict upon it.

When the territorial jurisdictions of the nobles were to decay, they lost the privilege of giving pardons, as well as the other advantages annexed to their fiefs. The judges who succeeded them, were not to possess their prerogatives. Other, and more cultivated maxims of law and equity, had grown familiar. Unconnected with the distributions and the offices of justice, but as peers, the nobles were to cease to interfere with law and bulifefs in their estates or territories. In this condition, their prerogatives could pass no where but to the crown. That of mercy was to be swallowed up
with the rest. When regular courts were erected, and when
the barons neither levied troops, coined money, nor par-
doned crimes, all these privileges were to be exercised,
exclusively, by the sovereign. All the members of the com-
munity were then under one head. The kingdom seemed as
it were to be one great fief, and the people looked up to
the sovereign as the only superior.

The act of parliament which had the effect to abridge,
for ever, the high prerogatives of the nobles, declares,
That no person or persons, of what estate or degree soever
they be, from the first day of July, which shall be in the
year of our Lord God 1536, shall have any power or
authority to pardon or remit any treasons, murders, man-
sluughters, or any kind of felonies, whatsoever they be; nor
any accusatories to any treasons, murders, mansluughters, or
felonies; or any outlawries, for any such offences committed,
perpetrated, done, or divulged, or hereafter to be committed,
done or divulged by or against any person or persons, in any
part of this realm, Wales, or to the marches of the same;
but that the King’s Highness, his heirs and successors, Kings
of this realm, shall have the whole power and authority
thereof, united and knit to the imperial crown of this

(3) Du Cange, Differt. 29. sur l’Histoire de St. Louis.
Brussel, usage general des siefs, liv. 2.

(4) ‘Subciperet tam inimicitias seu patris seu propinquii,
quam amicitias, necesse est.’ Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 21.

Hence the deadly feuds of our ancestors. Such is the state
of manners in all rude ages. The American carries his friends-
ships and his resentments to extremity, and delivers them as
an inheritance to his sons. He is the best friend, and the
bitterest enemy. When he is disposed to be hostile, he
knows how to conceal his sentiments: ‘He can even affect
9 to be reconciled till he catches the opportunity of revenge.
9 No distance of place, and no length of time can allay
9 his resentment, or protect the object of it.’ Europ.
Settem. in Amer. vol. 1. p. 165.

It was in consequence of the principle or right of revenge,
that the Greeks made it a maxim of their creed, that the
gods punish the crimes of the wicked upon their innocent posterity. It was a consequence of it, that, even in modern times, those incelement and ungenerous laws were enacted, which taint the blood of a rebel, which dare to violate the sacred rights of humanity, and to punish a blameless progeny with penalties and forfeitures.

(5) "In Gallia, non solum in omnibus civitatibus, atque pagis partibusque, sed pene etiam in singulis domibus, factiones sunt; earumque factionum sunt principes, qui summan auctoritatem eorum judicio habere extimantur; quorum ad arbitrium judiciumque summa rerum consilio- rumque redate." Caesar, de Bell. Gall. lib. 6. c. 10.

After the Germanic conquests, the words saida, feid, feeb, and feud, came to express the hostilities of the combination of kindred, who revenged the death of any person of their blood, against the killer and his race. In the Anglo-Saxon period of our history, these factions and hostilities were prevalent to an uncommon degree. And, what is worthy of observation, when a person was outlawed, and could form no combination of this sort for his protection, but might be put to death by any individual who met him, the term frendles-man, expressed his condition. "Talem, fays Bracton, vocant Anglici Utlaughe, & alio nomine antiquitus solet nominari, sicilicet FRENDLES-MAN."

Lib. 3. p. 129.

About the year 944, King Edmund, with a view of repressing the violence and pernicious tendency of such confederacies, enacted the following method for their regulation.

Memet, & nos omnes taedet impiarum & quotidianarum pignarum quae inter nos ipfos fiunt, & propterea in hunc modum fiatuismus. Si quis alium posthac interfecerit, folus cum interfeci cognatis favidam gerito, cujuscumque conditionis fuerit, ni ope amicorum integram weram intra 12 mensas persolverit. Sin deftituerint eum cognati & noluerint: Volumus ut illi omnes [praeter reum] à faida sint liberis, dum tamen, nec victimæ ei prebéant, nec refugium. Quod si quis hoc fecerit suis omnibus apud regem multatator, & cum eo quem deftituit nuper, favidam
jam suflineat propinquorum interfeci. Qui vero ab alio
cognatorum quam a reo simplicer vindictam, fit in faida
ipius regis & amicorum fuorum omnium, omnibusque
p. 209.
The method of compounding, or of buying away the
resentment of the injured kindred, is thus described by
the same prince.
Prudentium est faidas compescere. Primo [de more
gentium] oratorum mitet interfector ad cognatos interfeci,
unciaturum le velle eifdem satisfacere. Deinde tradatur
interfector in manus oratoris, ut coram veniat pacaté,
& de olenda wera spondeat. Sponsem solvi fatisdato.
Hoc facto, indignetur mundium regis, ab illo die usque
in 21 noctes, & colligat mulctam dependito; post alias
21 noctes manbotam, & nocte 21 sequenti primam were
Transactions of the same nature, characterize the criminal
jurisprudence of all infant nations. 'Criminal matters' says
a most acute and elegant writer, 'are generally compro-
mised among the Americans in the following manner. The
offender absents himself; his friends send a compliment
of condolence to those of the party murdered. Presents
are offered, which are rarely refused. The head of the
family appears, who, in a formal speech, delivers the
presents, which consist often of above sixty articles, every
one of which is given to cancel some part of the offence,
and to affadge the grief of the suffering party. With the
first he says, By this I remove the hatchet from the
wound, and make it to fall out of the hands of him
who is prepared to revenge the injury; with the second,
I bury up the blood of that wound; and so on, in apt figures,
taking away, one by one, all the ill consequences of the
The hostilities and factions of which I speak, were sup-
ported among the Angio-Saxons, as among the Gauls and
the Germans, by the authority and countenance of the chiefs
and the nobles. In the Norman times, the barons gave
letters or mandates of protection to individuals, whom they
were disposed to serve. Even kings gave obligations to
abbbeys and monasteries, by which they were bound to protect
them against violence of every kind. On the consideration
of fines, they were even to remit their own animosities,
and protect criminals from justice. See Appendix, No. 3.
The same things had place in the other kingdoms of Europe.
Men, weak, and without strength, bought the assistance
and protection of the strong and powerful. Du Cange, voc.
(6) After the beautiful discovery of a magistrate, the
violence of the injured is corrected; and it is then, probably,
that fines and compensations for offences are invented, or at
least established. ‘Nec implacabiles durant,’ says Tacitus,
of the retentions of the Germans, ‘luitur enim etiam
homicidium certo armentorum ac pecorum numero, recipti-
que satisfactionem universalis domus.’ De Mor. Germ. c. 31.
These fines or compositions, of which it was the object
to satisfy the revenge of the relations of the person who had
suffered, were originally settled by their agreement with the
offender, or, by the discretion of the magistrate. Afterwards
they were fixed by ordinances. The Anglo-Saxon laws, as
well as those of the other barbarians, recount not only the
stated fines for particular offences, but for particular persons,
from the prince to the peasant. When the delinquent could
not pay the fine, which was to buy away, or to gratify
the resentment of the injured family, the law, before it
was improved, delivered him over to their resentment, and
the wild state of nature revived again. Compositions of this
kind were known, anciently, in Europe, under a variety
of names. See in the Glossaries, Wera, Faida, Compositio,
Wergeldum, &c.
The exaction of fines to the injured, among the ancient
Germans, I consider as a proof that, in criminal matters,
they had proceeded to appeal to a judge. I therefore differ
from Dr. Robertson, when he observes, that, ‘among the
ancient Germans, as well as other nations in a similar state
of society, the right of avenging injuries was a private
and personal right, exercised by force of arms, without
any reference to an umpire, or any appeal to a magistrate
for decision.' Hist. of Charles V. vol. i. p. 274.

In fact, it was not even solely the fine to individuals
that was known among the Germans. They had advanced
much farther in criminal jurisprudence. It was thought that
the criminal, beside offending a particular family by the
injury done to any of its number, had also offended the
society, by breaking its peace. A fine, likewise, was, on
this account, exacted from him, and went to the public
or fisc. And thus Mr. Hume, too, is mistaken, when he
will not allow that the Germans had made this step towards

These different fines, the composition to the individuals,
and that to the public, are pointedly and beautifully distin-
guished in the following passage of Tacitus. Having men-
tioned the methods in which the German nations punished
the greater crimes, he adds, 'Levioribus delictis pro modo
poenarum, equorum pecorumque numero convicti mul-
tantur. Pars multiæ Ræg vol Civitati: Pars igitur qui
vindicatur, vel propinquus ejus, exfolivitur.' De Mor.
Germ. c. 12. It is impossible for an authority to be more
express or satisfactory against these eminent writers.

After the conquests of the Germans, the fine for disturb-
ing the public peace was exacted under the name of fredum;
and it is observable, that a portion of the profits of it came
to constitute the first salary of judges.

The biographer of Charles V. I am sensible, professing
to be guided by Baron Montesquieu, denies that 'the
fredum was a compensation due to the community, on
account of the public peace;' and considers it as 'the
price paid to the magistrate for the protection he afforded
against the violence of resentment.' Vol. i. p. 300. This
notion seems not to agree with his former opinion, as he
conceives that the fredum was paid in the age of Tacitus *.

* 'A certain sum, called a fredum, was paid to the king or state, as
And I observe he has also affirmed, that the fine to the injured family may, in like manner, be traced back to the ancient Germans *, which appears to be another inconsistency with his former declaration. But, wavin any consideration of these inadvertencies, I think there is nothing more evident, than that the fredum was originally paid to the fisc, or to the sovereign, for the breach of the peace. The following arguments are stubborn, and perhaps conclusive.


"Hoc quoque jubemus, ut judices supra nominati, five finesales, de quacunque libet causa freda non exigant, priuquam facinus componatur. Si quis autem per cupiditatem ista transgressus fuerit, legibus componatur. Fredum autem non illi judici tribuat, cui culpam committerit, sed illi qui solutionem recipit, tertiam partem FISCO tribuat, ut PAX perpetua stabiliis permaneat." LL. Ripuar. tit. 89.

"Si quis liber liberum infra Janas ecclesiæ occiderit, cognoscat se contra Deum injuste fecisse, & ecclesiam Dei polluisset: Ad ipsam ecclesiam quam polluit lx. fol. componat.


* Tacitus expresses it, or the Fiscus, in the language of the barbarous laws; vol. I. p. 390.

* The payment of a fine, by way of satisfaction to the person or family injured, was the first device of a rude people, in order to check the career of private resentment, and to extinguish those fidae or deadly feuds, which were prosecuted among them, with the utmost violence. This custom may be traced back to the ancient Germans; vol. 1. p. 399.
Among the Anglo-Saxons, the fine for the violated peace was termed *Griethbrech. Spelm. Gloff.* It was, as times became mercenary, that a part of the *fredum,* and sometimes the whole of it, went to the judge. And the salary thus assigned to him, was not for the protection he afforded, for he was the servant of the public; but as the reward of his growing trouble, and the emolument of his office. See *LL. Sal. tit. 52. l. 3. tit. 55. l. 2. LL. Baivvar. tit. 2. l. 16.*

The giving a stipend to judges out of the fines for the violated peace, was common in England, as well as in the other states of Europe. This stipend or allowance was usually the third penny of the county. An old book of Battel-Abbey, cited by Mr. Selden, has these words: *Confue:udinaliter per totam Angliam mos antiquitus pro lege inoleverat, comites provinciarum TERTIUM DENARIUM fibi obtinerere.*

*Tit. Hon. part 2. cb. 5. sect. 7.* Gervase of Tilbury, or whoever wrote the old dialogue concerning the exchequer, speaks thus. *Comes est qui TERTIAM PORTIONEM eorum quae de placitis proveniunt in quolibet comitatu percipit.* And the Earl, he says, was called *Comes,* *quia Fisco socius est, & comes in percipiendis.* *Dial. de Scaccar. lib. 1. c. 17.*

This tract is published by Mr. Madox in his history of the exchequer. *De istis octo libris,* say the laws of the Con-

*confessor, * [scil. multa violatae pacis] *Rex habebat centum solidos, & Consul comitatus quinquaginta, qui TERTIUM habebat DENARIUM de foris facturis: Decanus autem reli-


What shows likewise, beyond a doubt, that the third penny of the county arose out of the fines for the violated peace, is the circumstance, that the Kings of England made formal grants of it to subjects whom they favored. This, the book already quoted concerning the exchequer, lays down in these words: *Hii (it had been speaking of Earls, and of the profits of fines,) tantum ista percipiant, quibus *regum munificentia obsequii praebuit, vel euniae probitatis intuitu comites fibi creat, & ratione dignitatis illius haec conferenda decrent, quibusdam hereditarie quibusdam personaliter.* *Dial. de Scaccar. ap. Madox, p. 402.*
higher Earls, or the Earls palatine, it is observable, had all the profits to their own use. Of the Earls who possessed the third penny, there is mentioned the Earl of Kent, who had it under William I. And there is evidence, that it was anciently enjoyed by the Earls of Arundel, Oxford, Essex, Norfolk, and Devonshire. Selden, Tit. Hon. part 2. ch. 5. Madox, Baron. Anglica, book 2. ch. 1.

(7) When the right of private war was acknowledged as a legal prerogative of nobility, regulations were made to adjust its nature and exertion. Beaumanoir, Coutumes de Beauvois, ch. 59. Du Cange, diction. 29. sur l'histoire de St. Louis. Boullainvillers on the ancient parliaments of France, letter 5. What is surprising, even the neglect of exercising this right, when a proper occasion required its exertion, was an offence to the order who professed it, and an object of punishment. 'Le Duc Sandrageisle,' says Saint Foix, 'ayant été tué par quelqu'un de ses ennemis, les grands du Royaume citèrent ses enfans qui n'égloient de venger sa mort, & les privèrent de sa succession.' Essais histor. tom. 2. p. 88. In France, this prerogative of the nobles was not entirely abolished in the middle of the fourteenth century. Brussel, usage général des Fiefs, liv. 2. ch. 2.

Dr. Robertson seems to imagine, that, in England after the Norman invasion, the nobility loft, or did not exercise the right of private war; and he reasons with a view to account for these particulars. Hist. of Charles V. vol. 1. * It is to be acknowledged, that the historians of

* * After the conquest, the mention of private wars among the nobility, occurs more rarely in the English history, than in that of any other European nation, and no laws concerning them are to be found in the body of their statutes. Such a change in their own manners, and such a variation from those of their neighbours, is remarkable. Is it to be ascribed to the extraordinary power which William the Norman acquired by right of conquest, and transmitted to his successors, which rendered the execution of justice more vigorous and decisive, and the jurisdiction of the King's court more extensive, than under the monarchs on the continent? Or, was it owing to the settlement of the Normans in England, who, having never adopted the practice of private war in
England have not been sufficiently attentive to record the private wars of the nobles. But this elegant writer ought, doubtless, to have remembered, that, in the higher order of its nobility, the right of private war was as much inherent as the coinage of money, the holding of courts, or any other of their prerogatives; and that these received not their last and effectual blow till the age and reign of Henry VIII.

In the appendix, I produce a very curious proof of the exercise of private war in England. It is a truce between two nobles, agreeing to stop hostilities. Appendix, N° 4. The following passage of Glanville, is also a striking testimony of the existence of the right of private war. 'Utrum vero ad guerram fuam maintenendum pollut domini hujusmodi auxilia exigere quaero.' lib. 9. c. 8. And the dispute between Richard, Earl Marshal, and Henry III., of which there is a singular relation in Matthew Paris, is certainly to be accounted for on the principle of this prerogative.

Nor is there wanting other evidence of its existence. It was in a great measure, from the exercise of the right of private war, that in England, in the age of Stephen, there were above eleven hundred forts and castles. Lord Lyttelton's History of Henry II. vol. 1. p. 418. The

* their own country, abolished it in the kingdom which they conquered?
* It is asserted, in an ordinance of John King of France, that in all times past, persons of every rank in Normandy have been prohibited to wage war, and the practice has been deemed unlawful. Ordon.
* tom. 2. p. 407. If this fact were certain, it would go far towards explaining the peculiarity which I have mentioned. But, as there are some English acts of parliament, which, according to the remark of the learned author of the observations on the statutes, chiefly the more ancient, recite falsehoods, it may be added, that this is not peculiar to the laws of that country. Notwithstanding the positive assertion in this public law of France, there is good reason for considering it as a statute which recites a falsehood. Charles V. vol. 1. p. 286, 287.

The first question that is put by this historian, is founded on a mistake; for William the Norman achieved no conquest over England. The second question is founded on a supposed fact, which he appears to regard as of no moment; and indeed it does not deserve to be considered in any other light.
feudum jurabile & reddible was likewise a consequence of it, by which a sovereign or a noble put a vassal into any of his castles, in order to defend it, and to guard his stores and his prisoners, and whom he bound by an oath, to restore it in a certain time, or to his call or mandate. This form of fief and tenure was not only known in England, but frequent there; and mention is made of it in the laws of Henry I. The right of private war was, therefore, often exercised in this country; and, what deserves observation, without paying an attention to this right, it is impossible to explain those ordinances of Henry which allude to this feudal peculiarity. Spelman, not attending to it, could not reach their meaning, and pronounces of them, that they are obscure and corrupt. Gloss. voc. Castellacium. Their sense, notwithstanding, when tried by this standard, is easy and natural.

(8) The prerogatives of the higher nobility throughout Europe, may be referred to the following heads; the power of making war of their private authority, the right of life and death in their territories, the levying of imposts, the raising of troops, the coining of money, and the making of laws. It is to be wished, that some inquisitive and judicious antiquary would collect from the English laws and records, all the circumstances to be found which have a relation to these topics. He could not offer a more valuable present to the public.

These powers were exercised by the higher nobles among the Anglo-Saxons. For, though palatinates, which are generally allowed to have possessed them, were not familiar by name in those times; yet, I cannot but agree with Mr. Selden, that the sense and substance of them were then fully known. The Anglo-Saxon earls, who had their earldoms to their own use, had regal jurisdiction, and the king’s writ of ordinary justice did not run in their dominions. Such, for example, was Etheldred Earl of Mercian, under King Alfred, and his son King Edward. Selden, Tit. Hon. part. 2. ch. 5. sect. 8. Dissert. concerning the Antiq. of the Engl. Constitution, part 3.
A VIEW OF SOCIETY

After the Norman invasion, many of the higher nobility were expressly known as Earls-Palatine. Cheshire was a palatinate, and possessed by its earls, ad gladium, scut ipse rex totam tenebat Angliam ad coronam suam. The ancient Earls of Pembroke were also palatines, being domini totius comitatus de Pembroch, and holding totum regale infra praecinctum comitatus sui de Pembroch. This is the language of records. The like regality was claimed in the barony of Haverford. The bishops of Durham had, anciently, omnia jura regalia, & omnes libertates regales infra libertatem suam Dunelmensis. The archbishop of York had a regality in Hexham, which, anciently, was styled a county-palatine. The bishopric of Ely was a palatinate, or a royal franchise. The earldom of Lancaster was created palatine in the reign of Edward III. Hugo de Belesme Earl of Shrewsbury, under William II. had the title palatine. The same thing is mentioned of John Earl of Warren and Surrey, under Edward III. And Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford and Essex, had a regality within the honor of Breknou. Spelman Gloss. de Comite Palatino, Selden, tit. Hon. part. 2. ch. 5. sed. 8. Madox, Bar. Ang. p. 150. Camden, Brit. p. 661. 935.


The agreement of an alodial proprietor and the sovereign, or the feudal lord to whom he was disposed to grant his property, with the view of submitting it to tenure, directed the nature and peculiarity of the obligations to which he was to yield in his new situation. In consequence of the protection of a superior, he was generally to give his military service, and all the aids or incidents of fepts. At other times, however, he was only bound not to take arms against the superior, but to remain at peace, without any connexion with the enemies of his lord, and without the
the burden of the feudal incidents. He was simply to be bound to homage, and a passive fidelity.

It is contended for, indeed, strenuously, and at great length, by Monsr. Bouquet, that the greater and lesser jurisdictions were inherent in alodiality. Le droit Public de France. Dr. Smith, in his most ingenious Inquiries concerning the Wealth of Nations, gives his suffrage for the same opinion. And Dr. Robertson, notwithstanding what he has said concerning seigny, is, in some measure, disposed to it. Hist. of Charles V. vol. 1. p. 303.

If supreme jurisdiction, however, and eminent prerogatives were connected with alodiality, it seems altogether inconceivable, why its possessor should have converted it into seigny. Perhaps these writers have confounded with alodiality the feudum Francum, or honoratum, which expressed a condition of it after its conversion into seigny. ‘Ut omnia teneant,’ says an old monument cited in Du Cange, ‘ab Abbate & succesoribus in francum seodum & succesoribus nostris, amplius facere teneantur.’ ‘Haece omnia,’ says another charter cited by him, ‘habeo & teneo a te D. Raymundo Comite Melgorii ad seodum francum & honoratum, pro quibus omnibus praescriptis facio vobis hominum & fidelitatem.’ Du Cange, voc. Feudum francum & honoratum. ‘Les fiefs d’honneur,’ says Salvin, ‘sont ceux qui ont tellement conféré la nature de leur origine, qu’ils ne doivent au seigneur que la bouche & les mains, fans aucune charge de quint, de rachat, ni d’autre profit quelconque.’ ch. 3.

It is also well known, and might be illustrated by a variety of proofs, that alodial proprietors were so little attended to, and adorned with distinctions, that they could not, without the consent of the king, build, for their protection, a house of strength or a castle. Brussel, usage général des fiefs, vol. 1. p. 368. Yet this privilege was originally of so little account, that it was enjoyed indifferently by every feudal lord.

(to) Du Cange, voc. Gruarium, Pedagium, Rotaticum,
SECTION IV.

(1) DUCES ex virtute sumunt. . . . . . . Duces ex-
emplo potius quam imperio, si prompti, si conspicui:
Si ante aciem agant, admiratione praefunt. Tacit. de
Mor. Germ. c. 7. "Ubi quis ex principibus in concilio sa-
' dixit ducem fore, ut qui se sequi velint profiteantur; con-
surgunt ii qui & causam & hominem probant, suumque
auxilium pollicentur, atque ab multitudo collaudantur."
Caesar, de Bell. Gall. lib. 6. c. 22.
(2) Nihil autem neque publicae neque privatae rei,
nihil armati agunt. Sed arma sumere non ante cuiquam
moris, quam civitas sustentatur probaverit. Tum in ipso
confilio vel principum aliquis, vel pater, vel propinquus
scuto frameaque juvenem ornant." Tacit. de Mor. Germ.
c. 13.
"These military youthes," says Camden, "were called
in their language Knechts, as they are in ours." Introd.
to the Britannia, p. 245.
(3) Patri Regi Rex Ludovicus Engelheim occurrerat,
' indeque Renesburg cum eo abibat, ibique ense jam appetens
adolescentiae tempora, accidens est.' Vit. Lud. Pii,
ann. 791. Of King Athelstan there is this mention in
Malmsbury, "Nam & avus Alfredus prosperum ei regnum
imprecatus fuerat, videns & gratiose complexus speciei
spectatae puerum, & gestuum elegantium: Quem etiam
premature militem fecerat donatum chlamyde coccinea,
gemmato balteo, ense Saxonico, cum vagina aurea."
Lib. 2. "Henrico neroti suo David Rex Scotorum virilia
tradidit arma." Hen. Huntingdon, lib. 8. See De
Cange, voc. Arma.
Other particulars, expressive of the antiquity of knight-
In Europe.

Hood, may be seen in the Dissertations on the history of St. Louis. And, with regard to our Saxon ancestors in particular, Mr. Selden has found frequent mention of knights in the charters of that age. Titles of honor, part. 2. ch. 5. Mr. Hume, therefore, reasons hypothetically, when he admits not of chivalry in the Anglo-Saxon times. Appendix, II.

The addition Sir to the names of knights, was in use before the age of Edward I. and is from Sire, which in old French signifies seigneur, or lord. Though applicable to all knights, it served properly to distinguish those of the order who were not barons. To knights—baronet, who are a modern institution, and no part of the ancient chivalry, the addition Sir is granted by a clause in their patents of creation. Ashmole on the Garter, ch. 1.

The most honorable method of receiving knighthood was from the sovereign. But every possessor of a fief could bestow it; and one knight could create another. 'Eorum,' says Spelman, 'fuit militem facere quorum fuit feudum dare.' Dissert. de milite, ap. Relig. p. 180. 'Tout chevalier,' says St. Palaye, 'avoit le droit de faire chevaliers.' Mémoires sur l'ancienne chevalerie, tom. i. p. 70. A king could receive it from the hands of a private gentleman.

Its value may be remarked in the following peculiarity. 'Scitis,' said a Lombard king to his courtiers, 'non esse apud nos confuetudinem, ut regis filius cum patre prandeat, nisi prius a rege gentis externae arma susceperit.' Paul. 'Diac. lib. i. ap. Honoré de Sainte Marie, dissert. sur la chevalerie, p. 182. 'Liberos fuos,' said Cæsar of the Gauls, 'nisi quum adoleverint, ut munus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur; simulique in puerili aetate in publico in conspectu patris affluere, turpe ducent.' De Bell. Gall. lib. 6. c. 18.

'Dans les premiers temps,' says St. Palaye, 'la plus illustre naissance ne donnait aux nobles aucun rang personnel, a moins qu'ils n'y eussent ajouté le titre ou le grade de chevalier. Jusqu'alors on ne les considérait point comme membres de l'état, puisqu'ils n'en étoient point
encore les soutiens & les défenseurs: Les Écuyers appartenient à la maison du maître qu’ils servaient en cette qualité; ceux qui ne l’étaient pas encore, n’appartenaient qu’à la mère de famille dont ils avaient reçu la naissance & la première éducation." *Tom. 1. p. 298.*

Tacitus, having described the ceremony of investing the German with arms, adds, ‘Haec apud illos toga, hic primus juventae honos, ante hoc domus pars videntur, mox reipublicae.’ *De Mor. Germ. c. 13.*

This tendency and concurrence of circumstances is striking; and to these institutions we may trace the contempt with which the rights of minors, both of high and low condition, were treated, in the middle ages. To be in minority was to be nothing. Before his majority, or the investiture of arms, the individual did not seem a citizen or a subject.

(4) *Virtutem proprium hominis bonum: Deos fortioribus adeles.* *Tacit. Hist. lib. 4. c. 57.*

(5) *Et & alia observatio auspiciorum, qua gravium bellorum eventus explorant. Ejus gentis, cum qua bellum est, captivum quoquo modo interceptum, cum electo popularium fuorum, patris quemque armis committunt. Victoria hujus vel illius pro praebjudicio accepitur.* *Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 10.*

An instance of the duel is described in *Liv. lib. 28. c. 21.* And the prevalence of this mode of trial is mentioned by *Paterculus, l. 2. c. 118.* It was by single combat that the Celtic and Gothic nations decided the succession to offices, when the candidates were numerous and of equal merit. This was leaving it to the Deity to determine their pretensions. It was in this manner, that, among the Gauls, the place of the sovereign Druid was supplied, in cases of doubt. *His autem omnibus Druidibus praeest unus, qui summan intet eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, si quis ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit.* At si sunt plures suffragio Druidum adlegitur: *Nonnunquam etiam de principatu armis contendunt.* *Caesar, de Bell. Gall. lib. 6. c. 12.*
This form of deciding controversies and disputes, continued to prevail after the conquests of the barbaric nations; it is to be seen every where in their laws; and became an important article in the jurisprudence of the middle times. The following ordinances illustrate its use and purposes.

'Quia terram suam occupatam ab altero dixerit, adhibitis idoneis testibus, probat eam suam suisse: Si occupator contradixerit, campo diuidetur.' LL. Saxorum, tit. 15.

'Si quis Adalingum occiderit DC. fol. componat. Qui liberum occiderit, CC. fol. componat. Et de utroque si negaverit, cum xii. juret, aut in campo exeat, utrum ille voluerit, ad quem causa pertinet.' LL. Angl. & Wernior. tit. 1.

'Qui domum alterius noctu incenderit, damnum triplo sarciat, & in frdeo solid. Lx. aut si negat, cum undecim juret, aut campo decernat.' Ibid. tit. 8.

'Si aut calumniator, aut ille, cui calumniia irrogata est, fe solum ad sacramenti mysterium perficiendum protestet, & dixerit: Ego folus jurare volo, tu si audes nega sacramentum meum, & armis mecum contendes. Faciant etiam illud, si hoc eis ina placuerit; juret unus, & alius neget, & in campo exeat.' LL. Frison. tit. 11. L. 3.

'Si mulier in morte mariti sui consiliata fuerit per se, aut per suppositam personam, sit in potestate mariti sui de ea facere quod voluerit: Similiter & de rebus ipsius mulieris. Et si illa negaverit, liceat parentibus eam purgare aut per sacramentum, aut per pugnam, id est, per campionem.' LL. Longobard. lib. 1. tit. 3. L. 6.

Even from rude times, it is observable, that this trial took place at the command of the magistrate. And, it is probable, that it was in a good measure at his discretion, whether it took effect. If the truth was to be investigated by witnesses, so that complete evidence appeared, and there was no room for doubt, the battle might be avoided. It was, however, much to the taste of martial times. The barbarians, also, believed firmly that providence actually interfered in their affairs. And this absurdity was encouraged
by the Christian clergy, who, like the priests of all religions, found an interest in deceiving the vulgar.

(6) The word *nidering* or *nidering*, was a term of dishonor among the Normans and Danes; and, it is told by the historians of William Rufus, that, on an occasion which required the speedy aid of his vassals, including in his summons, that those of them who neglected to repair to him should be accounted *nidering*, his standard was immediately crowded. *Du Cange*, voc. *Nidering*.

To apply to a person the term *arga* among the Lombards, was to say, that he was a coward and a worthless fellow; and this offence to his honor could not be pardoned. If the accuser persisted in the affront, the combat took place; and, if he confessed his crime, he was subjected to a fine. *LL. Lombard.* tit. 5. l. 1.

Of *arga*, it is remarkable, that, in its original and proper signification, it meant a person who permitted the inhilities of his wife. *Proprie arga dicitur,* says *Du Cange*, *cujus uxor moechatur,* & *ille tacet.* *Gloss.* vol. 1. p. 319. *Spelm.* p. 40. A person of this kind was infamous in the extreme, and generally of the vilest condition. The word *cucurbita* had also this sense; and hence the French *couverard*, and our *cuckold*. Each of these terms, accordingly, in its enlarged acceptation, came naturally enough to signify a mean, cowardly, and stupid fellow. To have a *caput cucurbitum*, was to be a blockhead. And, from the confusion of the proper sense of *cucurbita*, and its enlarged one, the infamy seems to have arisen which, to this hour, constantly attends even an involuntary *cuckold*. It is thus, that even words operate upon manners.

The point of honor in Sweden, in early times, is well illustrated by the following law, which I give in the words of *Stiernbock*, whose book is not commonly to be met with.

'Si dicat vir viro probrosum verbum: Non es vir viri compar, aut virili pectore: Ego vero sum vir [inquit alter] qualis tu. Hi in trivio conveniunt. Si comparat provocans, nec provocatus; talis esto [provocatus] sequir ut dicitus, fuit, ut qui nec pro famina nec viro sacramentalis esse
Among the ancient Germans, in the age of Tacitus, the point of honor was carried so high, that a gamester having risked and lost his liberty and person on the last throw, submitted to voluntary servitude, allowing himself, though stronger and younger than his antagonist, to be bound and sold by him. "Ea est in re prava pervicacia; ipsi fidelem vocant." Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 24. The other words of the passage are: "Aleam quod mirere, sobrii inter seria exercent, tanta lucrandi perdendive temeritate, ut cum omnia defecerunt, extremo ac novissimo jactu, de libertate & de corpore contendant. Victus voluntarium servitutem adit: quamvis junior, quamvis robustior, alligare se ac venire patitur."

It is not foreign to the purposes of this work, to remark, that the passion for play followed the conquests of the barbarians; that many ordinances were made to suppress it; and that, to this hour, it is a point of honor to extinguish game-debts. There is something interesting in this subject, and I cannot leave it without starting a conjecture.

The idea of borrowing under an obligation of repayment, was too cultivated for the German gamester. When he had lost every thing *, he therefore staked his liberty and his person. Having left his woods, he improved upon this usage; and, instead of endangering his person, gave a pledge as a security that he would pay his losses. "Wadia dabat." Lindenbrog. Gloss. voc. Wadium. The usage was not lost.

* It does not appear what the German usually played for. It might be, sometimes, the coins of the Romans. "Jam & pecuniam accipere docuius." Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 15. His chains and ornaments, Mantes and furs, were probably his common stakes.

The custom of pledges introduced by gaming, grew common in other transactions, and in debts of every kind. From moveables, which were the first pledges, a transition was soon made to land. Hence the mortuum-vadium, the pawn of land, or the mortgage; and hence also the legal doctrine of diffrester. Such a mixture is there of whim and accident in the greater as well as the minutest precautions of civil polity!

The forms of a trial in the duel at common law, and in the duel for points of honor, were distinct. This subject will be treated in the sequel.


There is a remarkable passage in Procopius with regard to King Totilas, from which we may learn the dexterity which was exhibited in such military sports.

Ipsa equo eximio vectus, inter geminas acies armorum

† † It is called a dead-gage, says Cowel; because whatsoever profit it yieldeth, yet it redeemeth not itself by yielding such profit, except the whole sum borrowed be likewise paid at the day. The Interpreter, voc. Mortage.

IN EUROPE.

...ludum sie re ludebat. Equum enim circumcursens ac reflectens utroque versum, orbis orbibus impediebat. Sic equitans, haustam in auras juculabatur, eamque, cum tremula relabatur, atripiebat medium, & ex altera manu in alteram faene trajiciens, ac dextere mutans, operam huic arti feliciter navatam offendebat: reflexus ab arte, & flexus multiplici nunc huc nunc illuc ita inclinabat, ut appararet diligentem ipsum a pueritia didicisse saltare.' Lib. 4. c. 31.

These ideas make a figure even in the paradise of the Gothic nations. 'Tell me,' says Gangler in the Edda, 'How do the heroes divert themselves when they are not drinking?' 'Every day,' replies Har, 'as soon as they have dressed themselves, they take their arms; and, entering the lifts, fight till they cut one another in pieces: This is their diversion. But, no sooner does the hour of repast approach, than they remount their steeds all safe, and sound, and return to drink in the palace of Odin.' The Edda, or ancient Icelandic or Runic mythology, ap. Northern Antiquities, vol. 2. p. 105. See also Kayser, Antiq. Select. Septentr. & Celt. p. 127.

(9) In the books of the middle times, tournaments are called ludi militares, militaria exercitia, & imaginariae bellorum prolationes. A writer in Du Cange says, 'Torneaments, dicunt quaedam nudinae, vel feriae, in quibus milites ex edicto convenire solent, & ad ostensionem virium suarum & audaciae temere congregari, vel congregi.' Gloss. voc. Torneamentum.

These exercises were the great schools of discipline and war. Their high antiquity on the continent may be seen in the dissertations on the history of St. Louis. And, there is mention of them in England in the days of King Edgar, and at a more ancient period. Selden, duello, ch. 3. Mr. Madox was therefore in a great mistake, when he ascribed the rise of the spirit of toreyeing to the holy wars. Bar. Angl. p. 281.

The frequent accidents which necessarily happened in the exercise of these representations of war, through the impetuosity of valor, and the extravaganza of heroism; the
fulminations of the church; and, above all, the jealousy of princes which was excited by armed nobles and their retainers, gave them powerful checks. They continued, notwithstanding, to be long in fashion. In England, they were practised in the reign of Queen Elizabeth; and their total disappearance was preceded, under the elder James and his son Charles, by a gentle method of them, termed cavoufals.

Torneaments originally were celebrated by all warriors at their pleasure. In after-times, the sovereign, as the head of chivalry and arms, claimed their direction, and issued out his licences and prohibitions. Richard I. by the following patent to Hubert, Archbishop of Canterbury, gave licence for lifts or torneaments in five places within the kingdom.

"Sciatis nos concedisse, quod torneamenta sint in Anglia in quinque placeis, inter Sarum & Wilton, inter Warwick & Kelingworth, inter Stamford & Walingford, inter Brakeley & Mixcher, inter Bly & Tikehill, ita quod pac terrae meae non infringatur. Et comes qui ibi torneare voluerit, dabit nobis 20 marcias, & baro 10 marcias, & miles, qui terram habuerit, 4 marcias, & qui non habuerit, 2 marcias. Nullus autem extraneus ibi attorneabit. Unde vobis mandamus, quod ad diem torneamenti habeatis ibi 2 clericos & 2 milites vestros, ad capiendum sacramentum de comite & barone, quod nobis de praedita pecunia ante torneamentum satisfaciet, & quod nullum torneare permittant: antequam super hoc satisfecerint; & in breviari faciant quantum & a quibus receperint. Et 10 marcias pro carta ad opus nostrum capiatis, unde comes Sarum, & comes de Clara, & comes de Warrena plegii sunt.

"Teste meipso, apud villam episcopi 22 die Augusti.' Ex lib. Rubro Scaccarii, ap. Selden in the Dexto, ch. 3.

Edward I. and Edward III. granted the liberty of holding yearly a joust viris militaribus comitatus Lincoln. Richard Redman, and his three companions in arms, had the licence of Richard II. bastiendum cum Willielmo Halberton cum tribus sociis apud civitas Carloli. And a similar liberty
was granted to John de Gray by Henry IV. *Cottoni Positibum*, p. 63. Edward I. commanded, by proclamation, that no tourneys or jousting, or seeking of adventures, and no feats of arms should be celebrated or undertaken without his permission. *Publice fecit proclamari, & firmiter inhiberi, ne quis, sub foris factura terrarum & omnium tenementorum, toreare, bordeare, justa facere, aventure quaeere, seu alias ad arma ire praefumat, sine licentia Regis speciali.* *Cot. Pof. p. 67. There are also prohibitions of tourneys by Henry III. and other princes. They command all earls, barons, knights, and others, under their faith, homage, and affection, and under pain of losing their lands and tenements, that they presume not to tourney, make jousts, seek adventures, or go to feats of arms within the realm, without the King's express leave. See *Appendix, No. V.*

(10) "Tum ad negotia, nec minus saepe ad convivia, procedunt armati." *Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 22.*

This usage continued during the middle times. The potestivity of the Germans went in armor to their parliaments and public councils, and to their private visits and meetings. Justice, says *Meavay*, was rendered among the Franks by people in arms: The axe and the buckler were hung upon a pillar in the midst of the maie or the court. See *his history under Clotaire II.* From this practice among the Anglo-Saxons, the hundred court was, in some counties, called the *Wapentake.* The hundreder, holding up his lance, it was touched by those of all the members, and thus the assembly was constituted. *LL. Edward. Confes. c. 33. Wapnu, says Whitelocke, is arms, and tac, touch.* *Notes upon the King's writ for members of Parliament, vol. 2. p. 39.*

To this day, in the kingdoms of Europe, the wearing of a sword is a part of dress. We go in arms to a feast as well as to a battle, and retain, in orderly times, a custom which habitual danger, and the defects of legislation, made necessary to barbarians. The clergy, it seems, pertinaciously opposed the custom, and it was retained with obstinacy.
What is more surprising, they have ceased to exclaim against it, and yet it continues!

(11) "Suetum reliquisse praecipuum flagitiun. Nec aut
sacris adeesse, aut concilium inire ignominioso fas.' Tacit.
de Mor. Germ. c. 6.

Hence a high composition was allowed to the Frank, who
had been reproached injuriously with the loss of his shield.
'Si quis homo ingenues allo imprope averit, quod suetum
suum jacasset, & fuga lapsus fuisset, & non potuerit
adprobare, DC. den. qui faciunt to. xv. culpabilis judi-
cetur.' Paetis. legis Salicæ, ap. Georgisch. p. 69. It was
by raising him aloft on a shield, and supporting him on
their shoulders, that the Germans proclaimed their sovereign,
or lifted up a general to command their armies. Tacit. Hist.
lib. 4. c. 15. It was by the same ceremony that the Kings
of the Franks were acknowledged. This was their inaugura-
tion. The escutcheon or shield, says Favine, is the essentail
note of a nobleman, a knight, and an esquire. Theatre of
Honor, book 1. ch. 2.

The usages which had their rise from arms, make a
curious figure in the Gothic nations. We know from Tacitus,
that the founding or clashing of arms, expressed approba-
tion in the German assemblies; that a javelin wet with
blood, and a war-horse, were the rewards of German valor;
that suits of armor were a flattering present to the more
distinguished chiefs in the German communities; that an inter-
change of arms constituted the ceremonial of marriage among
this people; and, that their only public amusement was
the leaping amidst the threatening points of swords and
lances. De Mor. Germ. c. 11, 15, 18, 24.

Charlemagne used to seal his treaties with the pommel
of his sword: 'With the point of it,' said he, 'I will
maintain them.' St. Foix, Hist. vol. 2. p. 74. To
take his arms from a free man, was to deprive him of his
rank, and to reduce him to the condition of a slave. LL.
Alfr. c. 1. And to put into the hands of a slave the arms
of a free man, was to give him his liberty. When an indi-
vidual gave his oath in a court, or would bind himself
in the most solemn manner to the performance of his contracts, he laid his hand on his sword. In the judicial combat, the customs growing out of arms were numerous: Thus to strike a person with a club, or to give him a blow on the face, was to treat him like a villain; because villains were permitted to fight only with clubs, and were not allowed to cover their faces with armor. *L'esprit des Loix*, liv. 28. ch. 20. A free man could not part with his sword as a part of his ransom. *LL. Longobard. lib. i. tit. xi. l. 33.* And what shows, in a particular manner, the severity of the forest-laws, the killing of a royal stag inferred the loss of the shield, or the reduction of a free-man to a slave. *LL. Forest. Cant. c. 25.* From the change of arms there resulted a change of usages. Thus, when archery was introduced, to wound the finger which sends off the arrow, was punished more severely than the maiming of the other fingers. *Lindenbr. Gloss. voc. Digitus.*

The old Germans rushed to battle with a loud noise, applying their shields to their mouths, that their voices might rise by repercussion into a fuller and more sonorous swell. *Sunt illis haec quoque carmina, quorum relatu quent barditum vocant, accendunt animos, futuraeque pugnae fortunam ipso cantu augurantur; terrent enim, trepidantve, prout sonuit acies. Nec tam voces illae, quam virtutis concentus, videntur. Affectatur praecipue aperitas soni, & fractum murmure, objectis ad os furtis, quo plenior & gravior vox repercussu intumescat.* *Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 3.*

It merits observation, that, from this usage, there grew the *cri d'armes* of the middle ages. These cries were supposed to incite to valor, and to make the soldier precipitate himself upon the enemy. *Montjoie Saint Denis,* was a famous cry of the Franks. *Deus adiuva, Deus vult,* were cries during the crusades. Every banneret, or every knight who had a banner, had a cry peculiar to himself and the troops under him. Barons had also their cries. There were thus general and particular cries. While siefs and the feudal militia continued, these cries prevailed in Europe. They
were lost on the introduction of an improved military discipline, and of standing armies. Perhaps, it is to these cries, that we must trace the origin of the mottos to ensigns armorial.

(12) 'Scuta tectissimis coloribus distinguunt.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 6.

On the foundation of the sagum, or the short vest of the Gaul and German, which covered his arms, shoulders, and breast, coats of arms arose. 'La cotte d'armes a été le vêtement le plus ordinaire des anciens Gaulois: il étoit appelé par eux sagum, d'où nous avons emprunté le mot de saye, ou de sayon.' Differt. i. sur l'Histoire de St. Louis, p. 127. 'Tegumen omnibus sagum,' says Tacitus, c. 17.

According to this instructive historian, the sagum was adorned with spots and with bits of fur. 'Eligunt seras, & detracta velamina spargunt maculis, pellibusque belluum.' c. 17. And we know from Herodian, that it was sometimes ornamented with silver. Lib. 4.

These things are very curious; and it is impossible not to see in them the colors, the furs, and the metals which are the materials of the science of blazonry.

When Tacitus mentions the shield, he takes occasion to remark, that the German warriors had the knowledge of coats of mail, and of head-pieces or helmets, but seldom made use of them. His words are 'Paucis loricae, vix uni alterius caelis, aut galea.' c. 6. They were about to be more fashionable.


(14) These captives were of the tribe of the Catti, a Germanic people; for it is surely this tribe that Dio means, when he speaks of the Cenmi. 'Horum captae a Romanis uxoribus, interrogatae ab Antonino, utrum vendi, an occidi mallet, mori se male respondenterunt: quumque essent prœtea venditae, omnes mortem sibi conceverunt: Non nullæ una filios interfecerunt.' Excerpt. e Dion. p. 876.
A multitude of examples, to the same purpose, might easily be collected, if it were necessary.

But, while we reflect on these things, it must not be fancied, that the German women were deficient in gentleness. A high independent spirit is not inconsistent with the softest passions. There are a few beautiful and energetic words in Tacitus which may be employed on this occasion, and finely express the distinctive characters of the sexes in ancient Germany. ‘Lamenta ac lacrymas cito: dolorem & tristitiam tarde ponunt. Faeminitis lugere honestum est; viris meminisse.’ De Mor. Germ. c. 27.

(15) Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 7.


(17) ‘Regnator omnium Deus, cetera subjecta atque parentia.’ Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 39. This testimony of the purity of the German theology, is well illustrated by the following passage of the Icelandic Edda.


* Aut quid potest efficere? Aut quid voluit ad gloriam suam manifestandum? Har. resp. Ille vivit per omne aevum,


(18) ‘Auspicia, forte forteque ut qui maxime observant.’ Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 9. See also, Du Gange, voc. Aucones & Sors. The following form of divination was common to all the German tribes. ‘Virgam frugiferarum arbori decifam, in furculos amputant, eosque notis quibusdama discretos super candidam vestem temere ac fortuito spar-gunt. Mox si publice consulatur facerdos civitatis, sin privatim, ipse pater familias precatus deos, coelumque suspiiciens, ter singulos tollit, jublatos, secundum impressam ante notam interpretatur.’ De Mor. Germ. c. 10. Of this folly, there is yet a remain in the Baguette Decinatoire of the miners in Germany; and it is to be observed, that the heralds of the Franks had consecrated twigs, which
they bore as the emblems of peace. Thus the heralds sent by Gundobald to Guntram appeared 'cum virgis consagratis, juxta ritum Francorum, ut seilcit non contingueruntur ab ullo.' Gregory of Tours, lib. 7. c. 32. But, what is more remarkable, these twigs came to figure in the investiture of lands. Hence the feoffment or saleine per sustum & per baculum, per virgam & per ramum. Hence the tenure par la verge, which is formally treated by Littleton. On what a simple foundation does there rise institutions, important and interesting in business and society!

(19) Hence the Gothic ordeals, the fire ordeal, and the water ordeal. Of the antiquity of these trials I have spoken in another work. Differ. on the Antiq. of the Eng. Constitut. part 4. It is observable, that the trials of fire and water, though absurd in the greatest degree, were much encouraged by the Christian clergy. What is more disgraceful to them, they invented modes of trial, founded in the same superstition, and not less absurd. These were the judgment of the cros, the confisit or consecrated morfel, the Eucharist, and the fortes sanctorum. By the first, the criminal was to remain with his arms extended before a cross for six or seven hours, without motion. If he failed in sustaining this trial, he lost his cause, and was judged guilty. By the second, the accused person swallowed a bit of bread or cheese, over which the priest had muttered a form of execration. If he was guilty, he was suffocated by the morfel; if innocent, he escaped without injury. In the judgment of the Eucharist, the symbols of the blood and body of Christ were employed; and they convicted the guilty, by acting as a poison, which inflicted death or sickness. The fortes sanctorum consisted in the opening, at a venture, the Bible, or any holy book, and in considering as oracular the first passage that presented itself. See Du Cange, voc. Crux, Confisit, Eucharistia, Sors. This impiety, and these impositions on the common understanding of mankind, advanced the temporal emolument of the priesthood; an end, which is at all times more important to them than the interests of religion and virtue.

(20) *Matrem
(20) 'Matrem Deum venerantur. Insigne superstitionis, formae apertae gestant. Id pro armis omnique tutela, sectum deae cultorem etiam inter hostes praestat.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 45.

'I know a song,' said Odis, 'by which I soften and enchant the arms of my enemies, and render their weapons of none effect. I know a song which I need only to sing, when men have loaded me with bonds; for the moment I sing it, my chains fall to pieces, and I walk forth at liberty. I know a song useful to all mankind; for, as soon as hatred inflames the sons of men, the moment I sing it, they are appeased. I know a song of such virtue, that, were I caught in a storm, I can hush the winds, and render the air perfectly calm.' The Magic of Odis, ap. North. Antiq. vol. 2. p. 217. Du Cange, Literae Solutoriae, & voc. Incantare.

By secret or magical operations, it was not only supposed, that men could defend themselves against all dangers whatever, and render themselves invulnerable; but that they could even change themselves into wolves, and other animals. The word werewolf expressed this metamorphosis, and the extravagancy is to be traced to a distant antiquity.

'Neuri, ut accepi mus, statis temporibus in lupos transfigurantur; deinde, exacto spatio quod huic sorti attribu- tum est, in pristinam faciem revertuntur.' Solinus, c. 15.

To late times this ridiculous fancy was continued down among the Irish; and Camden was puzzled to account for it. Britannia by Gibbon, vol. 2. p. 1350.

(21) These things appear clearly and strongly from the laws which were made against them, after the introduction of Christianity, and from other authentic evidence. Capit. Kar. & Lud. lib. 7. LL. Longobard. lib. 2. tit. 38. Du Cange, voc. Fons. Arbor, &c. Pelloutier, Hist. des Celtes, vol. 2. edit. par Mons. de Chiniac.

(22) Du Cange, voc. Fadus, Fada, Caragus, Dufi, Folleti Daemones, Tempestrarii. Edda. Keyser, Antiq. Septentr. & Celt. Here we have the source of the wonders and extravagancies of the old romance.
(23) 'Deo imperante quem adeisse bellantibus credunt.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 7. This deity was called Temp or Tis. After the age of Tacitus, if I am not mistaken, he had usually the name of Odin; and, it is of Odin that Wormius thus expresses himself, 'Suam implorantibus opem in bello, instar fenis monoclui equo insidentis, & albo clypeo tecti, quandoque se conspiciendum praebuit.' Monument. Dan. c. 4.

(24) Traces of the spirit of gallantry and love, it is to be remarked, appear in a striking manner, even in the religious system of the Gothic nations.

'Freya,' says the Edda, 'is the most propitious of the goddesses. The place which she inhabits in heaven is called the union of the people.' She goes on horseback to every place where battles are fought, and affords her right to one half of the slain; the other half belongs to Odin. Her palace is large and magnificent; thence she sails forth in a chariot drawn by two cats. She lends a very favorable ear to those who sue for her assistance. It is from her that the ladies have received the name which we give them in our language. She is very much delighted with the songs of lovers; and such as would be happy in their amours, ought to worship this goddess.' p. 76.

In another fable of the Edda, there are the following particulars. 'Gefion is a virgin, and takes into her service all chaste maids after their death. Fylla, who is also a virgin, wears her beautiful locks flowing over her shoulders. Her head is adorned with a golden riband. She is intrusted with the toilet and slippers of Frigga, and admitted into the most important secrets of that goddess. . . . Siona employs herself in turning men's hearts and thoughts to love, and in making young men and maidens well with each other. Hence lovers bear her name. Lovna is so good and gracious, and accords so heartily to the tender vows of men, that, by a peculiar power which Odin and Frigga have given her, she can reconcile lovers the most at variance. Varra presides over the oaths that men make, and particularly over the promises of lovers. She is attentive to

It is also remarkable, that, in the Gothic Elysium, it was beautiful virgins named *Valkyriae*, who poured out their liquor to the heroes. *Keysler, Antiq. Sept.* & p. 152.


It was the influence of such manners which induced that agreeable libertine Boccace very seriously to give thanks to God Almighty and the Ladies for their assistance in defending him against his enemies; and which made Petrarch compare his mistres Laura to Jesus Christ; circumstances which appeared so absurd to Mr. Hume. See his *Essays*, p. 277.

When the Count de Dunois was about to attack the English army which besieged Montargis, la Hire, a knight and a man of fashion who served under him, having received absolution, joined devoutly his hands, and thus prayed. "Dieu, je te prie que tu fasses aujourd'hui pour la Hire autant que tu voudrois que la Hire fit pour toi, s'il etoit Dieu, & tu fusses la Hire." *St. Foix*, *Ess. hist.* tome i. p. 347.

A picture, not less strange, and still more profane, is in the poetry of *Deudes de Prades*, a canon who had the reputation of being wise and spiritual. He thus laments the death of Brunet, a troubadour, or one of the provencal bards. "Il chantoit si bien, que les rossignols se taisoient d'admiration pour l'entendre. Aussi Dieu l'a-t-il pris pour son ufage. Je prie Dieu de le placer à sa droite. Si la
Vierge aime les gens courtois, qu'elle prenne celui-là.

_Histoire littéraire des Troubadours_, tome 1, p. 320.

These strokes are expressive, and illustrate, more than the most careful reasonings, the nature and spirit of the devotion of the ages of chivalry. Amidst the decencies and the proprieties which philosophy introduces in cultivated times, we look back, with surprize, to this gross familiarity with the supreme Being, and to this blasphemous insolence. Yet, it is difficult, at the same time, not to remember, that these things are equalled, if not exceeded, among us, by those gloomy and fanatical men, who, having got what they term the _new light_, conceit themselves the society of the _élite_, and the friends of God!

SECTION V.

(1) **The** character or station which preceded knighthood, was that of the _écuyer_, or armour-bearer. The candidate for chivalry had formerly been a _page_, a _valet_, or a _damoisieu_. The last term was applied to the sons of men of rank.


In those times, the terms _page_ and _valet_ were not expressive of meanness and low condition, as at present. _De Cange_, _De Valeti & Domicelius_. _Sir John Fortescue_, who was chief justice under Henry VI. has observed, when speaking of England, _Sunt Valeæi diversi in regione illa qui plus quam sexcenta scuta per annum expendere possunt._

_De Laud. Leg. Angliâe_, c. 29.

(2) The age of knighthood, it is probable, varied with the nature and weight of the arms which were in use at different periods. In general, it has been fixed by antiquaries and historians at 21 years. This rule, however, could be infringed in favor of signal merit or high birth. The

1 The power of the German priests did not escape the penetration of Tacitus. "Neque animadvertere, neque vincire, neque verberare quidem nisi sacerdotibus pernici. a fum." De Mor. Germ. c. 7. The Christian priests were no less selfish and ambitious. In every country of Europe, they attained immense wealth, and prodigious influence. They presided in the inferior courts with the civil magistrates; they took their seats in the national assemblies; and, in the preambles of the barbaric laws, they are often mentioned next to the Kings themselves. "Incipiant," says the prologue to the Capitularies of Charlemagne, "capitula regum & episcoporum, maximeque nobilem omnium Francorum." Baluz. Capit. Reg. Franc. tome 1. p. 698. It is thus, also, in some of the prefaces to the Anglo-Saxon laws. The powers they assumed were exorbitant, and often improperly exercised. To use the strong language of Bacon, "they were lovers of lordships, and troubleurs of states."

Hist. and polit. discourse on the laws and government of England.

(4) Selden, Tit. hon. part. 2. ch. 5. sect. 34, 35. Ashmole, Institutions of the Garter, ch. 1. sect. 9. Du Cange, voc. Miles. Daniel, Millic Françoise, lib. 3. ch. 4. La Roque, p. 354. 355. A description of the ceremonies used at the creation of knights of the bath, is inserted in the Appendix, N° 6. They were nearly the same with those employed in the creation of the knight-bachelor, and illustrate the manners of old times.

(5) The festum tyrocinii, which is the name given in the old historians to the rejoicings on the investiture of knighthood, often lasted many days; and, in the cases of persons of distinction, was solemnized with tournaments and shows. The season of tournaments was also embraced as a fit occasion for conferring knighthood on those whose
birth and fortune did not entitle them to exhibit these solemnities. And this, from the principle of giving encouragement to the military art. For the same reason, public entries into cities, coronations, and festivals of every kind, were opportunities for the creation of knights.


When the celebrated Joan d’Arc raised the siege of Orleans, the English commander, the Earl of Suffolk, was obliged to yield himself prisoner to a Frenchman called Renaud; but before he submitted, he asked his adversary whether he was a gentleman? On receiving a satisfactory answer, he demanded, Whether he was a knight? Renaud replied, That he had not yet attained that honor. Then I make you one, replied Suffolk. Upon which he gave him the blow with his sword, which dubbed him into that fraternity; and he immediately surrendered himself his prisoner. Hume, vol. 2. p. 340.


(8) The horse and armour of a knight were called his consequensium, or countenance. Selden, Tit. Hon. part 2. ch. 5. sect. 37.

The respectful behaviour, even to vanquished knights, and indeed the extreme honor in which knights in general were held, is exemplified very strongly in the conduct of Edward III. to Eustace de Ribaumont. This prince thought it necessary to leave England privately for the protection of Calais, and carried with him the Prince of Wales. The day after his arrival at Calais, a battle ensued between his troops and the French forces commanded by Geoffrey de
Charni, who, notwithstanding the truce which had been concluded between the contending powers, had bribed the governor of Calais to surrender the place to him. To prevent this circumstance, was the intention of Edward's visit.

This great prince, who fought as a private gentleman under Sir Walter Manny, encountered Eustace de Ribau- mont, a hardy and valorous knight, who beat him twice to the ground. Pushed to extremity, Edward had occasion for all his strength and address. After an encounter, sharp and dangerous, he vanquished his antagonist, who surren- dering his sword, yielded himself his prisoner. The next day the English enjoyed their victory, and in the evening the French prisoners were invited to sup with the Prince of Wales and the English nobility. After supper, Edward himself entered the apartment, and conversed, in a strain of compliment and familiarity, with the prisoners. His behaviour to his antagonist: Eustace de Ribauumont was more particularly attentive, and is thus described by Froissard.

Vint le Roi à Messire Eustache de Ribauumont: Vous êtes le chevalier au monde que veuille onques plus vaillamment affaillir ses ennemis, ne son corps deffendre, ni ne me trouvai onques en bataille où je veuille qui tant me donnait affaire corps à corps, que vous avez hui fait; si vous en donne le prix fur tous les chevaliers de ma court par droite sentence. A donc print le roi son chapelet qu'il portoit fur son chef (qui étoit bon & riche) & le meiit fur le chef de Monseigneur Eustache, & dit: Monseigneur Eustache, je vous donne ce chapelet pour le mieux combatant de la journée de ceux du dedans & du dehors, & vous prie que vous le portez cette année pour l'amour de moi. Je sai que vous êtes gai & amoureux, & que volontiers vous trouvés entre dames & demoiselles, si dites par tout où vous irez, que je le vous ai donné. Si vous quitte votre prison, & vous en pouvez partir demain, s'il vous plait.' an. 1348.

(10) The chief strength of armies consisted, at this time, of cavalry. The skilful management of a horse was, of consequence, one of the great accomplishments of a knight or a warrior. It is to be noticed, that this way of thinking characterized some of the German tribes, even in the age of Tacitus. The following energetic description of the Teutoni, is applicable, in a striking manner, to the purer ages of chivalry. \textit{Tectori super fortibus bellorum decus, equitum disciplinae arte praeeclunt. Nec major apud Cattos pedium laus, quam Tectoris equitum. Sic in histore maiores, postri imitantur. Hi lustros infantium, huec juvencum aemulato, perseverant seces.} De Mor. Germ. c. 32.

(11) Hence the distinction of knights bannieret and knights bachelors; the latter expression denoting the simple knight; the former, the knight who had a standard and followers. The numbers of knights and esquires who served under the bannieret, varied in proportion to his riches, and influence. It is also observable, that this dignity was not always feudal. It was sometimes personal. Selden, \textit{Tit. hon. part 2. ch. 3. fecl. 25. and ch. 9. fecl. 39. Du Cange, Differt. sur l'Histoire de S. Louis. Spelm. voc. Banerettus. Daniel, Milice Françoise, liv. 3. ch. 5.}


(13) An old ceremonial of chivalry has these words: \textit{Le Roy Artus d'Angleterre, & le Duc de Lencastre ordon. nèrent & firent la table ronde, & les behours, tournois, & joutes; & moult d'autres choses nobles, & jugements d'armes, dont ils ordonnèrent pour juger, dames & damoiselles, Roys d'armes & héraux.} Differt. 7. sur l'Histoire de S. Louis, p. 179.

(14) The greater tournaments were those given by sovereigns and princes, to which knights were invited from every part of Europe; for, over Christendom, the honor and privileges of knighthood were the same. The lesser tournaments were those given by the barons.

It deserves observations, that the exhibition of tornean-
ments produced an intercourse between the nations of Europe; which could not but contribute to knowledge and civilization. When there were no express prohibitions, knights followed the more important tournoiments wherever they were celebrated, for the purpose of studying the art of war; and that they might find signal and proper opportunities of distinguishing themselves, and of cultivating the friendship and acquaintance of illustrious persons of both sexes. It was even the fashion for knights to avoid the restraint of marriage for some years after their installation into the order, that they might consecrate them to the travelling into distant countries, and the visiting of foreign courts, 'afin de s'y rendre chevaliers parfaits.' St. Palaye, tom. 2. p. 8.

From these circumstances, it is obvious, that the strong conclusions of Dr. Robertson, concerning the little intercourse between nations, during the middle ages, are not to be relied upon in all their force, but to be understood with much reserve, and many limitations. Hist. of Charl. V. vol. 1. p. 325. & seq.

(15) This present was called faveur. St. Palaye, tom. 1. p. 95. Hence the pieces of lace or riband which are yet sometimes distributed at marriages, are termed the bride's favors.

(16) It would be tedious to enumerate and to describe the different forms of exercise or combat, which were practised in the tournoiments; and it is not necessary in this work. The joufe was the combat of one against one; les armes à outrance, were the combats of six against six, and consisted occasionally of more or fewer persons. Le pas d'armes, was the defence of a pass by one or more persons against every assailant. The curious reader may consult the books which treat expressly of tournoiments.


(18) 'Effigiesque & Signa quaedam detracta lucis in praecipium ferunt.' Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 7. The potters of the Germans were equally superstitious under the light of the gospel. 'Les Germains,' says St. Foix, who had this passages of Tacitus in his eye, 'portoient à
la guerre des drapeaux, & des figures qui étoient en dépôt
pendant la paix dans les bois sacrés.' He adds, 'Nos
Rois alloient prendre de même la chape de S. Martin
sur son tombeau, & l'oriflamme dans l'église de S. Denis,
& les reportoient lorsque la guerre étoit finie.' Edf. Hist.

149.—163. Pelloutier, Hist. des Celtes, liv. 3. ch. 18.

(20) The discerning reader will perceive, that I describe
Christianity from the writings of the clergy; because, it is
always from their representations of it that it acts upon society
and manners. I therefore speak politically, and not as an
inquirer into theology.

From the pretended friends of Christianity, and from its
most zealous partisans, too, I fear, it has received deep
and cruel wounds. Its most enlightened and genuine admirers
have reason to regret, that it has not been left to defend
itself. Were it possible to destroy the comments, the ex-
planations, the catechisms, and the systems of divines, a
very considerable blow would be given to infidelity. One
can respect the honest doubts of philosophy. But, is it
possible to withhold indignation or scorn, when ability-
stoops to be uncharitable and disingenuous, when bigotry
presses her folly, and spits her venom?

(21) It was Gregory VII. whose magnificent mind first
formed the plan of the croisés. The fanaticism, the heroic
spirit, and the wild enterprise of knighthood, suggested,
doubtless, the idea of them. The advantages they were to
give to the holy fee, and the church in general, were
numerous and great. The Popes not only conferred remission,
or pardon of their sins, on all those who yielded to this
madness; but, what was no less interesting, they undertook
the protection of their families and affairs. The clergy, of
consequence, drew immense wealth, by acting as tutors and
trustees for widows, pupils, and minors. The troops designed
for these pious projects, could be employed by the church
to protect and enlarge its temporalities; and, under the
pretence of recovering the holy sepulchre, prodigious sums
were to be extracted from women, the devour, the infirm, and the dying.

From the holy wars it followed, that new fraternities of knighthood were invented. Hence the knights of the holy sepulchre, the hospitallers, templars, and an infinite number of religious orders who shed blood, and deformed society, for the glory of God. Many of these acquired great riches, and all of them increased the influence of the church.

Some writers have fancied, but very absurdly, that the croisés gave rise to chivalry. Without chivalry the croisés could not have been carried into execution. The Popes and the clergy would in vain have preached, that they were the road to salvation and the gates to heaven.

From the cultivated state of manners in the east, some improvement was imported into Europe by the crusaders. But the cruades deserve not to be considered as the first, or indeed as a very powerful cause of refinement in Europe; though it is to be allowed, that they encouraged a respect for order, and ideas of regular government; and that they made additions to the science of heraldry and the fashions of liveries, and heightened the splendor of equipage and dress.

When the medal, however, is reversed, there appear many and great disadvantages. They drained the kingdoms of Europe of their inhabitants; they took away their riches, and thereby discouraged trade and the arts; they removed kings and nobles beyond the seas, and introduced into states disquiets and disorder; they added to the power of the Roman see, by affording favorable opportunities for the operation of its policy, and for establishing the right of the Popes to interfere in the temporal affairs of nations; and, in fine, they promoted every pious impertinence, and advanced the most abject superstition.

It is also worthy of remark, that some writers, who have no tincture of philosophy, have treated chivalry and the holy wars as primary and distinctive causes of the refinement of the European states; yet the latter, being really the con-
sequences of the former, their influence ought to have been ascribed to them.

The same want of penetration is perceivable in those, who, while they urge as a primary source of improvement, the revival of literature, hold out, distinctively, as another cause of it, the civil code, or the laws of the Romans. They might, with equal propriety, record as particular and distinctive sources of refinement, the writings of Cicero, of Livy, or of Tacitus.

During the prevalence of chivalry, it is likewise to be observed, that the ardor of redressing wrongs seized many knights to powerfully, that, attended by esquires, they wandered about in search of objects whose misfortunes and misery required their assistance and succour. And, as ladies engaged more particularly their attention, the relief of unfortunate damsels was the achievement they most courted. This was the rise of knights-errant, whose adventures produced romance. These were originally told as they happened. But the love of the marvellous came to interfere; fancy was indulged in her wildest exaggerations, and poetry gave her charms to the most monstrous fictions, and to scenes the most unnatural and gigantic.


In the battle of Poitiers, fought by the heroic Edward Prince of Wales, the King of France was made prisoner; and the behaviour to the captive monarch illustrates, more than any particulars I can mention, the nobleness of the principles of chivalry. The Earl of Warwick conducted the French king, with many demonstrations of respect, to the Prince's tent.

'Here,' says a great historian, 'commences the real and the truly admirable heroism of Edward: For victories are vulgar things, in comparison of that moderation and humanity discovered by a young prince of twenty-seven years of age, not yet cooled from the fury of battle, and elevated by as extraordinary and as unexpected success, as
had ever crowned the arms of any general. He came forth
to meet the captive king with all the signs of regard and
sympathy; administered comfort to him amidst his mis-
fortunes; paid him the tribute of praise due to his valor;
and ascribed his own victory merely to the blind chance of
war, or to a superior providence, which controls all the
efforts of human force and prudence. The behaviour of
John showed him not unworthy of this courteous treat-
ment: His present abject fortune never made him forget
a moment that he was a king: More sensible to Edward's
generosity than to his own calamities, he confessed, that,
notwithstanding his defeat and captivity, his honor was
still unimpaired; and that, if he yielded the victory, it
was at least gained by a prince of such consummate valor
and humanity.

Edward ordered a magnificent repast to be prepared in
his tent for the prisoners, and he himself served the
royal captive's table, as if he had been one of his retinue.
He stood at the King's back during the meal; constantly
refused to take a place at table; and declared, that, being
a subject, he was too well acquainted with the distance
between his own rank, and that of his royal Majesty, to
assume such freedom. All his father's pretensions to the
crown of France were now buried in oblivion: John, in
captivity, received the honors of a king, which were
refused him when seated on the throne: His misfortunes,
not his title, were respected: And the French prisoners,
conquered by his elevation of mind, more than by their
late discomfiture, burst out into tears of joy and admira-
tion; which were only checked by the reflection, that
such genuine and unaltered heroism in an enemy, must
certainly, in the issue, prove but the more dangerous to
their native country.' Hume, hist. of England, vol. 2.
p. 214. See also Ashmole, p. 673.

Morsels of story like these are precious, and distinguish
those historians who can render instructive the details which
common writers are only attentive to make agreeable.

(24.) The following was one of the oaths administered
by the constable in the duel. "A. de B. ye shall lay your
hand ayen on the holy gospels, and swere that ye shall
have no moo wepnes or poynets, but tho that ben aligned
you by the constable and mareschall, that is to wite,
gleyve, long swer, short swerd, and daggar: Nor no
knyfe, smal ne grete; ne none engine, ne none othir
instruments with poynet: Nor stone of vertue, nor hearb
of vertue; nor charme, nor experemt, nor none othir
enchauntment by you, nor for you, whereby ye tryst the
better to overcome C. de D. your adversarie, that shal come
ayens you within these lifts in his defence; nor that ye tryst
in none othir thynge properly, but in God and your body,
and your brave quarrell; so God you help, and all halowes,
and the holy gospells." Dugdale, origin. juridic. p. 82.
(25) The solemn taking away of the sword, the cutting
off the spurs, the tearing from the body the coat of arms,
and the bruising every piece of the knight's armour, appear to
have been ceremonies of the degradation. Selden, Tit. bon.
Religion came also to concern itself in a matter so important.
Priests pronounced over the culprit a psalm, containing im-
precations against traitors. Water was thrown upon him to
wash away the sacred character conferred by his installation
into the order. And, at length he was dragged on a hurdle
to the church, where there were said and performed over
him the prayers and the ceremonies which are used for the
 Authorities, Controversy; and Remarks.


BOOK II.
CHAPTER I.
SECTION I.

The ordinary form of homage and fealty varied in some little particulars in different nations, and in the same nations, at different times; and fidelity, while the fief was precarious, could only be promised during the connexion of the lord and the vassal. The oldest example of these ceremonies which is preserved, and perhaps the most simple, is that of Tassilon Duke of Bavaria, to King Pepin, in the year 757. It is thus described. "Tassilo Dux Bajoariarum cum primoribus gentis suae venit, & more Francorum, in manus regis in vassaticum manibus suis femetipsum commendavit; fidelitatemque, tam ipsi regi Pipino, quam filiis ejus Carolo & Carlomanno, jure jurando supra corpus Sancti Dionysii promisit." Adelmus, Annal. Franc. ap. Brussel, liv. i. ch. i. sed. 7.

From the words more Francorum it is to be inferred, that these usages were of a still higher antiquity; and, indeed, there can be little doubt, that they prevailed from the earliest times. We find them, accordingly, in the Anglo-Saxon period of our history. Nichol. Praefat. ad LL. Anglo-Saxon. p. 6, 7. It is true, notwithstanding, that some eminent authors contend, that they were consequences of
the perpetuity of the fief. But the homage of Tassilone, and
the Anglo-Saxon fealty, were prior to the general establish-
ment of this perpetuity. And there does not appear any
solid reason to think, that these ceremonies were a result
of it.

When the exercise of the prerogative of private war among
the nobles had spread its disorders and calamity, it became
common, both in France and England, to insert a reserva-
tion in the form of homage, which limited the fidelity of
the vassals of a lord or a chief, to the acts which were not
derogatory to the faith they owed to the king. This was
intended as an obstruction to the prevalence of private war,
and discovered an advancement in the ideas of civilization
and government. Saint Louis established it in France; and
it appears in England, in what is called 'The Statute of
Homage,' in the seventeenth year of Edward II. By this
form or ordinance, the vassal, after expressing the fidelity he
is to bear to his lord for the lands he holds, is made to
add, 'saving the faith I owe unto our Lord the King.

Out of these usages, in this state of their restriction,
there grew, as fiefs died away, the ligeance, or allegiance,
which every subject, whether a proprietor of land or not,
was supposed to owe to his sovereign. Thus, the oath of
ligeance or fealty was to produce the oath of allegiance.

(2) I have endeavoured to investigate, in another work,
the high antiquity of the feudal incidents. Dissert. on the
Antiq. of the Eng. Constitut. part 2. It is a common mistake,
that the feudal fruits or incidents were not known in England
till the Norman times. This opinion is to be ascribed to the
want of curiosity in some inquirers of great name, who have
given a sanction to it without deliberation; and to the nar-
row prejudices of others, who affect to consider the Norman
invasion as the proper era of our political constitution,
from the view of paying a compliment to the prerogative
of our kings, by holding out Duke William as a conqueror,
and by influting the consequence of the people. It is in this
manner that errors have been engrained upon errors.

The Anglo-Saxon laws, however, oppose the conceit of
the
the late rise of the feudal incidents, with a force that is not to be resisted. They make an actual and express mention of them. And, for formal illustrations of the feudal incidents in the Anglo-Saxon times, the reader may consult, *The case of tenures upon the commission of defective titles*, argued by the judges of Ireland, Mr. Selden, in many parts of his works, and Mr. Whitaker, in his history of Manchester.

One of Canute's laws I cannot forbear to mention; because it illustrates very strongly, in this age, the existence of tenures. It ordains that a vassal who deserts, in an expedition against an enemy, shall forfeit his land to his lord; and that, if he should fall in battle, his heriot shall be remitted, and his land go to his heirs. *L. Canut. c. 75.*

This desertion was, in all feudal countries, one of the causes of the escheate or forfeiture of the fief. *Spelm. Gloss. voc. Felonia.* We thus learn, that, in the age of Canute, there prevailed the feudal incidents of escheat and heriot, and that lands were not only granted in tenure, but might go to heirs; a circumstance which may lead us to conceive, that advances were then made towards the establishment of the perpetuity of the fief. This important law is misinterpreted by Wilkins, and, probably, with design. The learned reader will not require to be informed, that his version of the Anglo-Saxon laws is often defective and unfaithful.

What is worthy of notice, while many writers of England look to Normandy and Duke William for the introduction of the feudal law, and its incidents, into their nation, an author of France, William Roville of Alençon, in his preface to the grand Coutumier of Normandy, contends, that they were first brought into that duchy from England by Edward the Confessor.

The facts is, that these fruits and this law extended themselves over Europe; from no principle of adoption, but from the peculiarity of manners and situation of the barbaric nations who made conquests. There is no position in history which is clearer than this. And Du Cange, in particular, when we consider the amazing extent of his information, is
very much to blame, while he fondly holds out the tenet, that the usages and institutions of the European states proceeded chiefly from the manners and customs of France.

(3) Even in the days of Bracton, after the feudal association had received its most staggering blows, the doctrines of the reciprocal duties of the lord and the vassal, and their perpetual league, are laid down in strong language.

"Nihil facere potest tenens propter obligationem homagii, quod vertatur domino ad exhaesionem vel aliam atrocem injuriam; nec dominus tenenti, e converso. Quod si fecerint, dissolvitur & extinguitur homagium omnino, & homagii connectio & obligatio, & erit inde iusum judicium cum venerit contra homagium & fideltatis sacramentum, quod in eo in quo delinquunt puniantur, &c. in persona domini, quod amittat dominium, & in persona tenentis, quod amittat tenementum." De leg. & Consuetud. Angl. p. 81.

(4) The state, I know, of the people of old, as described by Dr. Brady, and Mr. Hume, by Dr. Robertson, and a multitude of other authors, was uniformly most abject; and yet the power of the nobles is represented as most exorbitant. They dwell on what they term the aristocratical genius of the times, and seem to take a pleasure in painting the abjectness of the people.

It is remarkable, that these notions are contradictory and inconsistent. The nobles had immense influence; but, in what did this influence consist? Was it not in the numbers and the attachment of their vassals? These were their power; and, did they oppress them? The reverse is the truth. They treated them with the utmost lenity, and it was their interest to do so. The cordiality, accordingly, of the nobles and the vassals, was maintained during a long tract of time, of which the history has been repeatedly written, without the necessary attention to its nature and spirit. The decay, indeed, of this cordiality, was to create confusions and oppression; and, what confirms my remark, it was in this situation, that the power of the nobles was to be humbled.
The error I mention was first thrown out by a writer of ability, because it suited the theory he inculcates. It was adopted, for the same reason, by a writer of still greater talents; and nothing more is necessary to give currency to an absurdity. For, the authors who do not think for themselves, but who gain a fashionable and temporary reputation, by giving dresses and trappings to other men’s notions, will repeat it till it is believed.

(5) Mr. Hume has the following very singular passage:

None of the feudal governments in Europe had such institutions as the county-courts, which the great authority of the conqueror still retained from the Saxon customs. All the freeholders of the county, even the greatest barons, were obliged to attend the sheriff in these courts, and to assist him in the administration of justice. ‘Append. II.

In every feudal kingdom, notwithstanding this strong affirmation, the comes was known, and the comitatus. The comitatus, or county, was the territory or estate of the comes; and the court he held, and in which he presided, was the county-court, to which the freeholders and feudatories were called, and acted as assessors or judges. Du Cange, and Spelman, voc. Comites.

There might, indeed, be a comes who enjoyed not the property of the county, but only a part of it; and, in this case, he was constituted to exercise jurisdiction in it. The sheriff originally was a very subordinate officer. He was sometimes no more than the deputy of the comes. Hence vicecomes was the term by which he was known. Sometimes he was only vested with the care of the king’s interest in particular counties. And, in reality, he began only to figure when the jurisdiction of the nobles, in the decline of nefs, had died away to a shadow.

It is said by Mr. Hume, that the great authority of the conqueror retained the county-courts from the Saxon customs. He thus infers, that these courts were favorable to the royal authority. The fact, however, is exactly the reverse. The greater jurisdiction there is in the nobles and the people, the more limited is the prerogative of princes. The county-
courts were eminent and formidable supports of the liberty of the subject. And, instead of giving them encouragement, it was the interest of the conqueror to employ his great authority in their suppression.

Mr. Hume adds, in the spirit of a writer who had made a discovery, "Perhaps this institution of county-courts in England has had greater effect on the government, than has yet been distinctly pointed out by historians, or traced by antiquaries." Ibid.

I have remarked these and other weak places in the works of this illustrious man, that I might show the danger of implicit confidence even in the greatest names. The undue weight of what are called great authorities, gives a slap to the spirit of inquiry in all sciences.

(6) The distinguishing freedom of the Germanic tribes was carried with them into their conquests. Tacitus said of them, while they were in their woods, "De minoribus rebus principes consultant, de majoribus omnes." De Mor. Germ. c. 11. This peculiarity of government, and this importance of the people, appear not only in the history of these nations, but in their laws. The prologue to the laws of the Franks has these words. "Hoc decretum est apud regem, & principes ejus, & apud cunctum populum Christianum, qui infra regnum Merwungorum consistunt." Lindenbr. p. 399. The lex Alamannorum begins thus. "Incipit lex Alamannorum, quae temporibis Chlotarii regis una cum principibus suis, id sunt, xxxiii. eosphocopis, & xxxiiii. ducibus, & lxxii. comitibus, vel cetero populo consistuta eft." Lindenbr. p. 367. In the same sense, we read of the infinita multitudine fidelium who appeared in the Anglo-Saxon parliaments. Spelman's councils. Originally, as in Germany, in all the European states, every person who wore a sword had a title to go to the national assembly. The sovereign could enact no new laws, and could repeal no old ones, without the consent of the people.

But, in ancient Germany, a representation of the people was even practised on particular occasions; and we are told by Tacitus, that, when Civillis declared war against the
Romans, 'convocavit primores gentis, & promptissimos vulgi.' Tacit. Hist. lib. 4. See farther A Dissertation concerning the Antiquity of the English Constitution, part 5. After the erection of the European states, the inconveniences arising from great multitudes of armed men in councils of business, discovered fully the advantages of representation. And deputies made their appearance in these to consult and defend the privileges and rights of the people. The exact era of this establishment is not known in any country of Europe. Its antiquity, however, is beyond all doubt. And the commons made a figure in the assemblies of France, termed, les champs de mars, & les champs de mai, in the cortes of Spain, and in the wittenagemots of England.

It is probable, that in France, the people were represented before the age of Charlemagne. That they were important in the reign of this politic and powerful prince, there are proofs, positive and certain. The instructive work of Archbishop Hincmar, de ordine Palatii, places this matter in a strong light; and Abbé Mably, who copies and comments upon it, acknowledges the supreme power of the assemblies of those days, selects examples of it, and of the interference and consideration of the people. In fact, nothing of any moment or value, in peace or in war, or in any subject whatever, could be done without their approbation. 'Lex consensu populi fit, & constitutione regis.' Capit. Kar. Calv. an. 864. ap. Baluz. tom. 2. ap. 177. This conclusion is supported by express, numerous, and concurring testimonies of ancient laws, histories, and ordinances. See Hotoman, Franco-Gallia, ch. 10, 11. Mably Observat. sur l'Hist. de France, lib. 2. ch. 2. Rymer on the antiquity of parliaments, &c.*

* Mr. Hume, notwithstanding a variety of authorities which oppose his assertions, could express himself to the following purpose. 'The great similarity among all the feudal governments of Europe, is well known to every man that has any acquaintance with ancient history; and the antiquarians of all foreign countries, where the question was never embarrased by party-disputes, have allowed, that the commons were very late in being admitted to a share in the legislative power.' Append. 11,
These assemblies were very different from the États Généraux of after-times, when the rights of the people were insulted, and the legislative power came to reside in the sovereign. Yet, it is not uncommon to confound them; and, on the foundation of this error, improper conclusions have been inferred against the commons of England.

At what period the deputies of the people appeared in the cortes of Spain, is uncertain. But the liberty of the Visigoths, who founded that kingdom, was ferocious; their love of independence was fostered by the ills of the Moorish domination; and their sovereigns, during a long tract of time, were kept in a surprising degree of subjection. Like all the other barbaric tribes who made establishments, the individuals among the Goths who wore swords, assembled originally in the councils of the nation; and when the disadvantages of crowded and tumultuous assemblies were uniformly felt, it is natural to conclude, that the deputies of the people were called to represent them.

From design, however, in the Spanish government, from the ravages of the Moors, or from the waste and havoc of time, no direct proofs of this representation, it is said, are to be found of an earlier date than the year 1133. Of the appearance of the deputies of the people, at this time, the evidence is produced by Dr. Geddes; and this writer has also published the writs of summons, which, in the year 1390, required the city of Abula to send its representatives to the parliament of Spain. Miscellaneous Tracts, vol. 1. There is likewise evidence of a Spanish parliament in the year 1179, in which the deputies of the people were assembled; and of another in 1210, in which they asfisted as a branch of the legislature. Gen. Hist. Span. ap. Whitelock, Notes upon the King's Writ, vol. 2. p. 65.

While liberty and the deputies of the people made a figure, and while the prerogative of the sovereign was restrained and directed by national councils and assemblies in the other countries of Europe, it seems the height of wildness to conclude, as many have done, that, in England, the inhabitants were
in a state of slavery, and that the mandate of the Prince was
the law. His condition, so far from being despotic, was
every moment exposed to danger and insult. He might be
deposed for a slight offence. He was elected to his office. And,
his coronation-oath expressed his subjection to the community,
and bound him to protect the rights of his subjects.

The Anglo-Saxon laws are proofs, that, instead of govern-
ing by his will or caprice, he was under the control of a
national assembly. In the preambles to them, we find, that
the wites or sapientes were a constituent branch of the govern-
ment. The expression seniores sapientes populi mei, is a part
of the prologue to the ordinances of King Ina, an. 712. And
the sapientes populi, or deputies of the people, appear in the
laws of other princes of the Anglo-Saxons. **LL. Anglo-Saxon.
ap. Wilkins.**

It is very remarkable, that the term sapientes, as may be
seen in Du Cange, in his explanation of it, expressed, in
Italy, in ancient times, those who governed the affairs of
cities and communities. When men, therefore, of this sort
are uniformly mentioned as a part of the Anglo-Saxon witten-
agemots, it is impossible, but to prejudice, not to see, that
they must have acted as the representatives of the people,
and must have procured this distinction from the opinion
entertained of their wisdom or experience.

By a curious testimony, it is even obvious, that the word
sapientes must have meant the commons. In the supplication
del county de Devonshire, to Edward III. there are these ex-
pressions, *que luy pleafe par l'ayvs des prelats, countees,
barons, & autres fages in ceft present parliament ordiner,*
&c. This supplication is printed in the 4. Inst. p. 232. In the
reign of the third Edward, from the autres fages expressing
the commons, it may surely be decisively inferred, that
sapientes had the same meaning in older times.

In fact, the expressions which denote the Anglo-Saxon
assemblies, allude to their nationality. *Commune concil-
ium, conventus omnium, concilium cleri & populi,
omnium principum & omnium sapientum conventus,* &c.
are appellations which mark forcibly the interference and affiance of the commons *.

In the annals of Winchelcomb, an. 811, there is to be seen the term procuratores, as expressive of a branch of the witenagemor. It also occurs in a charter of King Athelstan. And, that the persons denoted by it were the deputies of the people, seems past all doubt, when it is recollected, that, in the Spanish writers, this order of men is expressed by procuradores de las ciudades y villas. Nay, in Polydore Virgil, we meet the expression procuratores civitum populiue, p. 478, ap. Whitelocke, vol. 1, p. 378.

To these notices I might add a multitude of authorities, respectable and positive. But I mean not now to enter fully into the dispute concerning the importance of the people. To give completeness to the spirit of my present volume, it is sufficient for me to assert the antiquity of the commons, in opposition to an opinion of their late rise, which a modern historian, of great reputation, has inculcated, with that hardiness which he displays in all his writings, but with little of that power of thought and of reasoning which does honor to his philosophical works.

Mr. Hume, struck with the talents of Dr. Brady, deceived by his ability, disposed to pay adulation to government, or willing to profit by a facility, formed with art, and ready for adoption, has executed his history upon the tenets of this writer. Yet, of Dr. Brady it ought to be remembered, that he was the slave of a faction, and that he meanly prostituted an excellent understanding, and admirable quickness, to vindicate tyranny, and to destroy the rights of his nation. With no less pertinacity, but with an air of greater candor, and with the marks of a more liberal mind, Mr. Hume has employed himself to the same purposes; and his history, from

* Mr. Hume has observed, indeed, that 'None of the expressions of the ancient historians, though several hundred passages might be produced, can, without the utmost violence, be tortured to a meaning which will admit the Commons to be constituent members of the great council.' (Append. 1.) It is painful to remark a want of candor so glaring in so great a man.
its beginning to its conclusion, is chiefly to be regarded as a
plausible defence of prerogative. As an elegant and a spirited
composition, it merits every commendation. But no friend to
humanity, and to the freedom of this kingdom, will consider
his constitutional inquiries, with their effect on his narrative,
and compare them with the ancient and venerable monuments
of our story, without feeling a lively surprise, and a patriot
indignation.

(7) The general doctrines concerning wardships may be
seen in Craig, lib. 2. Du Cange, voc. Custos, Warda. La
Coutume reformée de Normandie, par Bassigne, Art. des
Gardes.

In that instructive collection of records, The history and
antiquities of the exchequer of the Kings of England, by
Mr. Madox, there are the following examples of the sale of
wardships by the crown, in the times which passed from Duke
William to King John.

Godfrey de Cramavill gave xxv l. x s. for the custody of the
land of Aketon, which was Ralf de Heldebouill's, and of
Ralf's heir during his nonage. Hugh de Flammavill proffered
x l. for the custody of his sister, with her land. Ralf de
Gemmue gave a fine of lx marks, that he might have the
custody and donation of Philip de Niwebote's daughter, with
her inheritance. Earl David gave cc marks to have the custody
of Stephen de Cameis, with his whole land, till his full age;
saving to the King the service of the said land; and Earl David
was to make no destruction upon it. And Philip Fitz-Robert
gave cc l. and c bacons and c cheefes for the wardship of the
land and heir of Ivo de Munby, till the heir came to be of

In remarking these sales, the value of money in its varia-
tions, is to be attended to. From Mr. Madox, it appears,
that, in the reign of Henry III. Simon de Montfort gave ten
thousand marks to have the custody of the lands and heir of
Gilbert de Unfranville, until the heir's full age, with the
heir's marriage, and with advowsons of churches, knight-
fees, and other pertinencies and echeats; and my Lord
Lyttleton has calculated the amount of this payment.
according to the present value of money. 'Ten thousand marks,' he observes, 'containing then as much silver in weight as twenty thousand pounds now; and the value of silver in those days, being unquestionably more than five times the present value, this sum was equivalent to a payment of above a hundred thousand pounds made to the exchequer at this time.' Hist. of Henry II. vol. 2. p. 297.


(8) Of reliefs in England, it is sufficient to give the following examples, as they will fully illustrate the oppressions which must have resulted from the exaction of this feudal incident.

In the 5th year of King Stephen, Walter Hait gave v marks of silver for relief of his father's land. Alice, wife of Roger Bigot, gave c and fourscore and xviii l. for her father's land or manour of Belvoir. Humfrey de Bohun paid xxii l. and x s. for relief of his father's land. Waleran Fitz William answered xxxiii l. vi s. and viii d. for relief of his land. In the reign of King Henry II. William Fitz William paid xxv marks for relief of his land; Theobald de Valeines xxx l. for relief of six knight-fees; and Robert de Dudaville x marks for relief. In the reign of K. Richard I. Robert de Odavill's son paid c marks for acceptance of his homage, and for relief and seisin of his land; Walter de Niewenton paid xxviii s. and iii d. for seisin of the fourth part of a knight's-fee, which was taken into the King's hands for default of paying relief. William de Novo Mercato gave c marks, that the King would receive his reasonable relief, to wit, c l. In the reign of K. John, John de Venecia gave ccc marks for seisin and relief, and did homage to the King, and was to make the King an acceptable present every year. Geoffrey Wake gave cc marks for his relief. Madox, Hist. of the excheq. vol. 1. p. 316, 317.

The minute steps in the history of reliefs, and of the other feudal perquisites, are no part of this work. The reader who would investigate English reliefs still farther, may consult LL. Guliel. LL. Hen. I. Chart. Johan. &c. and, for their state in foreign countries, he may consider what is said in
IN EUROPE. 251

Brussel, usage général des siefs, liv. 2. Assises de Jerusalem, and the Glossaries.

(9) Lyttleton on tenures, sect. 107. Du Cange, Disparagare. La Coutume reformée de Normandie.

(10) Celestia, wife of Richard son of Colbern, gave x l s. that she might have her children in wardship with their land, and that she might not be married, except to her own good-liking. William Bishop of Ely gave coxx marks, that he might have the custody of Stephen de Beauchamp, and might marry him to whom be pleased. William de St. Marie-church gave D marks, to have the wardship of Robert, son of Robert Fitzharding, with his whole inheritance, with the knight’s-fees, donations of churches, and marriages of women thereto belonging; and that he might marry him to one of his [William’s] kinwomen; provided, that Robert’s land should revert to him, when he came to full age. Bartholomew de Muleton gave c marks, to have the custody of the land and heir of Lambert de Ybetoft, and that he might marry Lambert’s wife to whom be pleased, but without disparagement. Geoffrey Crofs gave xl marks, for the wardship of the lands and heirs of Sampson De Mules, who held of the King in capite, by serjeantry, with the marriage of the heirs. John Earl of Lincoln, constable of Chester, fined MMM marks, to have the marriage of Richard de Clare, for the behoof of Maud, eldest daughter to the said Earl. Gilbert de Maifnil gave x marks of silver, that the King would give him leave to take a wife. Lucia, Countes of Chester, gave D marks of silver, that she might not be married within five years. Cecillie, wife of Hugh Pever, gave xii l s. that she might marry to whom she pleased. Ralf Fitz William gave c marks fine, that he might marry Margery, late wife of Nicholas Corbet, who held of the King in chief, and that Margery might be married to him. And Alice Bertram gave xx marks, that she might not be compelled to marry. Madox, bift. of the Exchequer, vol. 1.

p. 322—326. 463—466.

These valuable notices are from records in the reigns of Henry II. Rich. I. King John, Henry III. and Edward I.

(11) Henry II. levied an aid of one mark per fee, for the
marriage of his daughter Maud to the Duke of Saxony. Of this aid, the proportion of the Earl of Clare for his own knight-fee, and for those of his lady the Countess, of the old feoffment, was "four score and fourteen pounds and odd," and for his fees of the new feoffment, it was ciii s. iii d. The feoffments which had been made either to barons or knights, before the death of Henry I., were called vesus feoffament. Fees of the new feoffment were from the accession of Henry II. This appears from the Black Book of the Exchequer.

Henry III. had an aid of xl s. of every knight's fee to make his eldest son a knight. When King Richard was taken and imprisoned on his return from the holy wars, an aid was given for the ransom of his person. The barons and knights paid at the rate of xx s. per fee. Madox, hist. of the Excheq. vol. 1. p. 572. 599. 596.

In all cases of aids, the inferior vassals might be called to assist the crown vassals. They were even to contribute to extinguish their debts.


**SECTION II.**

(1) It is to be conceived, that, originally, little ceremony was employed in the duel. Book I. Chap. 2. Sect. 4. and the Notes. But, as ranks and manners improved, a thousand peculiarities were to be invented and observed. This institution, accordingly, is one of the most intricate in modern jurisprudence. It would be improper to attempt to exhaust, in a note, a topic which would require a large volume. It is only my province to put together some remarks.

I begin with a distinction which has escaped many inquirers, who have thence wandered in contradiction and obscurity,
The duel was, in one view, a precaution of civil polity; in another, an institution of honor. These distinctive characters it bore in its origin. Book I. Chap. 2. Sect. 4. And, in these different respects, it was governed by different forms. The common law, and the ordinary judges, directed it in the one condition; the court of chivalry, or the constitutions which gave a foundation to this court, governed it in the other. In reading what many authors have amassed on the duel, it is difficult to know what refers to the former state of the matter, and what to the latter. They either knew not the distinction, or possessed an imperfect notion of it. Even in the researches of Montesquieu, concerning the judicial combat, there is thence, perhaps, a faintness and embarrassment; and, in the observations of Dr. Robertson, on the same subject, the confusion is evident and palpable. See Note 22. to Charles V.

It has been affirmed, indeed, that the court of chivalry was not known till the eleventh century, or till a period still later. And, it is probable, that this court, in all its formalities, and in its condition of greatest splendor, existed not in an early age. But there is evidence, that its duties were exercised in very ancient times. And, from an examination of the oldest laws of the barbarians, it is to be inferred, that the business of it, except perhaps in a few instances, was not determined by the common judges. We know, at least, with certainty, in England, in the Saxon era, before a regular court of chivalry was established, points of honor and of war were under the direction of the heretoachs, while the duel, as a civil rule, was at the direction of the common judges; and that, in the Norman age, when the court of chivalry was formally in existence, with extensive powers, the constable and the marshal had succeeded to the jurisdiction of the heretoachs. Spelman, Gloss. p. 400. Sir Edward Coke on the court of chivalry.

The determination of a doubt, for which no complete evidence could be produced, was the end of the duel as a civil precaution. The decision of points of honor, and disputes of arms, or the satisfaction of a proud and a wounded spirit, was the end of the duel, as an institution of chivalry. While
the common judges of the land managed the duel in the former instance, as an object of common law; it was governed in the latter by the judges in the court of chivalry, that is, by the constable and the marshal; and the forms of procedure in these cases were essentially different.

Of the court of chivalry, the jurisdiction regarded matters of war, precedence, and armorial distinctions, as well as points of honor; and treasons, and deeds of arms committed without the realm, were objects of its cognizance. In a word, where the common law was defective, the powers of the constable and the marshal were competent. 4. Institut. c. 17.

Yet, from these officers, there lay an appeal to the sovereign, as the head of arms, and he might stop, by his power, their proceedings. It is thence that we find the Kings of England superceding combats of chivalry. It was as the head of the civil state they could supersede the combats of right, or at common law. Instances of their jurisdiction, in both cases, are not unusual. An exertion of it, in the duel of chivalry, took place in the intended combat between the Lord Rea and Mr. Ramsay. The Lord Rea, a Scots baron, impeached Ramsay and Meldrum for moving him beyond the feas, to join in the treasons of the Marquis of Hamilton. Ramsay denied the fact, and offered to clear himself by combat. A court of chivalry was constituted, by commissio under the great seal; and the parties were on the point of engaging, when Charles I. interposing to prevent the duel, sent them prisoners to the Tower. Kennet, complete history of England, vol. 3. p. 64. An interposition in the duel at common law, was exercised in an intended combat in a writ of right between the champions of Simon Low and Jo. Kine, petitioners, and of Thomas Paramore, defendant. The battle was discharged by Queen Elizabeth. Speelm. Gloss. p. 103.

In the duel by chivalry, champions were not usual; because questions of honor required the engagement of the parties. In the duels of right, the parties might have champions, because the trial was merely an appeal to the Divinity, who was to decide the truth by assisting, miraculously, the cause of the innocent person; and this assistance might be manifested
either to himself or to his representative. The fashion, however, of martial times, was an inducement to the parties themselves to engage. And, in general, champions were only proper for the old and infirm, for priests, minors, and women. Du Cange, voce Campiones.

Anciently, in the duel of right, there was a discretionary power in the judges to determine in what cases it was necessary; and this was a proper restraint on the violence with which the duel was courted, in preference to other modes of trial. Brusel, Usage général des Fiefs, liv. 3. ch. 13. Express laws were even made to describe the occasions in which alone it was to be expedient. There is, on this head, the following regulation of Henry I. 'Non fiat bellum sine capitali, ad minus x sol. nisi de furto vel hujusmodi nequitia compellatio fit, vel de pace regis infrafracta, vel in illis in quibus est capitale mortis, vel diffamationis.' LL. Hen. I. c. 59.

In the reign of Henry II. it was the practice to permit the defendant to take his choice between the affize or jury and the duel. 'Habebit electionem,' says Bracton, 'utrum se ponere velit super patriam, utrum culp. fit de crimine ei imposito, vel non: Vel defendendi se per corpus suum.' Lib. 3. c. 18. This marks the decline of the duel, and accordingly, it gradually gave way to the jury. To this alternative of being tried by one's country, which expresses the form of the jury, or by the duel, which expresses the appeal to the Divinity, there is yet an allusion in the question proposed to a culprit, and in his answer. Culprit, How wilt thou be tried? His reply is, By God and my country. There is here a rule of law which has survived its cause or necessity. The alternative is suggested in the question, when no alternative exists. And the answer includes both trials, when one only is in practice. Absurdities of this kind, for they surely deserve this name, must be frequent in the progress of jurisprudence in all nations.

The duel of chivalry lost its legality with the fall of the court of chivalry. It left behind it, however, the modern challenge or duel, which it is dishonorable to refuse, and illegal to
accept. The jury, which swallowed up the duel at common law, could here afford no remedy.

A punier, though a more useful relic of the honorable court of chivalry, which was once so high in repute, that it was in danger of encroaching on the jurisdiction of other courts, is yet familiar in the heralds who manage armories, descents, and funerals, and who record admissions to the peerage.

The decay of the manners of chivalry, was the distant cause of the fall of this court; and its immediate one was, perhaps, the jealousy of the great powers of its judges. There has been no regular high constable of England since the 13th year of Henry VIII. And the marshal dwindled down into a personal distinction, or name of dignity.

In France, points of honor were originally under the cognizance of the maire of the palace; and this officer, who was to acquire the greatest powers, appeared in times of a remote antiquity. _Du Cange, voc. Major Domus_. After the age of Hugh Capet, this dignity was suppressed; and out of its ruins four courts arose. One of these was the court of chivalry, or the offices of the high constable and marshal. The other courts were those of the high chancellor, the high treasurer, and the great master of France, or the judge of the King's household. For, in the era of his grandeur, the maire of the palace had engrossed to his jurisdiction whatever related to arms, justice, and finance.

(2) It has been contended, that a knight's fee consisted regularly of a certain number of acres. _Spelman, voc. Feodum_. _Camden, Introd. to the Brittain_. p. 246. But the value of acres must have varied according to their fertility and situation; and it seem the more probable notion, that a proportion of land, of a determined value, no matter for the quantity of the acres, was what in general constituted a knight's fee. The consideration of the revenue that was necessary for the maintenance of a knight, and for the furnishing of his arms, would direct the extent of the land. The will of the grantor, however, and the consent of the receiver, might constitute any portion
portion of land whatever a knight's fee, or subject it to the
service of a knight.
This is put palt all doubt by the following remarkable paper
in the Black Book of the Exchequer, which certifies Henry II.
of the state of the knight's fee of one of his vassals.

Carta Wilhelmi, filii Roberti.

Karissimo domino suo H. regi Anglorum, Willelmus, filius
Robertus, salutem. Scitis, quod de vobis teneo feodum et
militis pauperrimum, nec alium in eo feodavi, qui vix in
sufficientia, & siicet tenuit pater meus. Valete. Liber Niger

In the records of England, there is mention also of the
small fees of the honor of Moreton; and it is supposed that
the fees which were granted previous to the death of Henry I.
were in general more extensive than those which were posterior
to it. Madox, bift. of the Exch. vol. 1. p. 649. In England,
as well as in France, there are even frequent examples of
whole manors which were held by the service of one knight,
and accounted as a single knight's fee. Dugdale's baronage,
vol. 2. p. 107. Notes sur les Assises de Jerusalem, par
Thaumassiere, p. 252.

But, there were not only poor fees granted out by the
crown. There were even grants in capite of the half of a
knight's fee, and of other inferior portions of it. Of this the
charters which follow are an instructive evidence.

Carta * Guidonis Extranei.

Gwido extraneus tenet de Rege Alvin delegam per servitium
dimidii militis.

Carta Roberti, filii Albrici.

Domino suo Karisimo H. Regi Anglorum, Robertus, filius
Albrici Camerarrii, salutem. Scatis, Domine, quod ego teneo
de vobis feodum dimidii militis. Valete.

* Guy Strange.
Carta Willelmæ Martel.


It was chiefly the polity or the natural beneficence of princes and nobles that varied the condition of fees. At times, the fee was scarcely sufficient for the service required; and, on other occasions, it was infinitely plentiful, and beyond all proportion to the military purpose of the grant. Its value, on an average, is, however, to be calculated from records and acts of parliament. From William the Norman till King John, it was in progression, a five, a ten, a fifteen, and a twenty pound land. In King John's times, it grew to be a forty pound land; and, before the era of the act of parliament which took away and abolished the military part of the feudal system, the knight's fee was computed at L. 200 per annum. These things are very curious, and might lead to political reasonings of importance. Spelman, voc. Miles, Ashmole on the Order of the Garter.

(3) Baronies and earldoms could be created or made to consist of any number of fees whatever. Thus, the barony of William de Albeney Brito consisted of thirty-three knight's fees, the barony of Earl Reginald, of two hundred and fifteen knight's fees, and a third part of a fee; and William de Meschines had a barony of eleven knight's fees. Madox, Baronia Anglica, p. 91. Thus the earldom of Geoffrey Fitzpeter Earl of Essex consisted of sixty knight's fees; and that of Aubry Earl of Oxford, of thirty knight's fees. Selden, Tit. bon. part. 2. cb. 5. sect. 26. Instances to the same purpose might be collected in the greatest profusion.

From facts so particular, it is, I conceive, to be concluded, that Sir Edward Coke is mistaken, when he lays it down,

* Sir William Blackstone seems to think, that the knight's fee, in the reign of the Conqueror, was stated at L. 20 per annum, which is certainly a mistake. Book. 2. ch. 5.
that a barony consisted, in ancient times, of thirteen knight's fees and a third part, and that an earldom consisted of twenty knight's fees. 1. Institut. p. 69, 70. According to this way of thinking, some of the barons and earls whose names are now recited, must have possessed many baronies, and many earldoms; an idea which is surely not only strange, but absurd. The supposition that nobility is inherent in a certain and determined number of fees, which this opinion implies, is a notion, that does not correspond with feudal principles. The nobility was given, not by the mere possession of the fees, but by their erection into an honor by the sovereign. Yet Sir Edward Coke had an authority for what he said. It is the old treatise, termed the Modus tenendi parliamentum. This treatise, however, is not of so high a date as the Saxon times, to which it pretends; and the circumstance of its assumed antiquity, with the intrinsic proofs it bears of being a fabrication in the times of Edward III. detract very much from its weight. And, in the present case, it is in opposition to indubitable monuments of history.

I am sensible, that Sir William Blackstone has said expressly, 'That a certain number of knight-fees were requisite to make up a barony.' Book 2. ch. 5. He has not, however, entered into any detail concerning this position. I should, therefore, imagine, that he has relied implicitly on the authority of Sir Edward Coke, which ought not, perhaps, to be esteemed too highly in questions which have a connexion with the feudal institutions.

* That Lord Coke had neglected too much the feudal customs, was a matter of lamentation to Sir Henry Spelman. It is with a reference to them, that Sir Henry thus speaks: 'I do marvel many times, that my Lord Coke, adorning our law with so many flowers of antiquity and foreign learning, hath not, as I suppose, turned aside into this field, from whence so many roots of our law have of old been taken and transplanted. I wish some worthy lawyer would read them diligently, and show the several heads from whence these ours are taken. They beyond the fees are not only diligent, but very curious in this kind; but we are all for profit and lucrando pane, taking what we find at market, without inquiring whence it came.' Relig. Spelman. p. 99.

The neglect which produced this complaint, and drew this wish from
Nor is it in England only that examples can be produced to refute this notion about the constitution of baronies and earldoms. In Normandy, five knight's fees might form a barony; and of this the following testimonies are an authentic proof.


(4) The terms knight and chivaler denoted both the knight of honor and the knight of tenure; and chivalry was used to express both knighthood and knight-service. Hence, it has proceeded, that these persons and these states have been confounded. Yet the marks of their difference are so strong and pointed, that one must wonder that writers should mistake them. It is not, however, mean and common compilers only who have been deceived. Sir Edward Coke, notwithstanding his distinguishing head, is of this number. When estimating the value of the knight's fee at £ 20 per annum, he appeals to the statute de militibus, an. 1. Ed. II. and, by the sense of his illustration, he conceives, that the knights alluded to there, were the same with the possessor of knight's fees; and they, no doubt, had knight's fees; but a knight's fee might be enjoyed not only by the tenants in capite of the crown, but by the tenants of a vassal, or by the tenants of a sub-vassal. Now, to these the statute makes no allusion. It did not mean to annex knighthood to every land-holder in the
kingdom who had a knight’s fee; but to encourage arms, by requiring the tenants in capite of the crown to take to them the dignity. He thus confounds knighthood and the knight’s fee. Coke on Lyttleton, p. 69.

If I am not deceived, Sir William Blackstone has fallen into the same mistake, and has added to it. Speaking of the knights of honor, or the equites aurati, from the gilt spurs they wore, he thus expresses himself. “They are also called, in our law, milites, because they formed a part, or, indeed, the whole of the royal army, in virtue of their feudal tenures; one condition of which was, that every one who held a knight’s fee (which, in Henry the Second’s time, amounted to L. 20 per annum), was obliged to be knighted, and attend the king in his wars, or fine for his non-compliance. The exertion of this prerogative, as an expedient to raise money, in the reign of Charles I. gave great offence, though warranted by law and the recent example of Queen Elizabeth: But it was, at the Restoration, together with all other military branches of the feudal law, abolished; and this kind of knighthood has, since that time, fallen into great disrepute.” Book. I. ch. 12.

After what I have just said, and what is laid down in the text, I need hardly observe, that this learned and able writer has confounded the knight of honor and the knight of tenure. And, that the requisition to take knighthood, was not made to every possessor of a knight’s fee, but to the tenants of knight’s fees held in capite of the crown, who had merely a sufficiency to maintain the dignity, and were thence disposed not to take it. See farther the notes to chapter IV. The idea that the whole force of the royal army consisted of knights of honor, or dubbed knights, is so extraordinary a circumstance, that it might have shown, of itself, to this eminent writer, the source of his error. Had every soldier in the feudal army received the investiture of arms? Could he wear a feal, surpaks in silk and drees, uf ensigns-armorial, and enjoy all the other privileges of knighthood? But, while I hazard these remarks, my reader will observe, that, it is with the greatest deference
I dissent from Sir William Blackstone, whose abilities are the
object of a most general and deferred admiration.

In this note, and, perhaps, in other places of this
volume, I used the expression 'tenant in capite of the crown,'
which may seem a tautology to many. The phrase, 'a tenant
in capite,' may, indeed, express sufficiently the royal
vassal. It may, however, express a tenant in capite of a sub-
ject. And this distinction was not unknown in the law of

(5) It is natural to think, that the number of tenants in
capite who gave no infeudations, could not be great. The
following curious records of the age of Henry II. are proofs,
however, that tenants in capite, who gave no infeudations,
did actually exist; and, perhaps, they show, by implication,
their uncommonness.

Carta Albani de Hairum.

Domino suo excellentissimo H. Regi Anglorum, Albanus de
Hairum. Vestræ excellentiae notifico, quod ego in Hertford-
shire feodum 1. militis de veteri fesamento de vobis principa-
liter teneo, & quod de novo fesamento nihil habeo, nec
militem feostatum aliquem habeo. Valete.

Carta Mathaei de Gerardi Villa.

Mathaeus de Gerardi Villa tenet in capite de Domino Rege
feodum 1. militis de veteri fesamento, & nullum habet
militem fesatum, nec habet aliquem de novo. Liber Niger
Scaccarum, p. 246, 247.

In the same instructive monument, there are other examples
of grants in capite of single fees; and, in general, it is to be
inferred, that, of such grants, there were sub-infeudations.
p. 129, 130. 179.
CHAPTER II.


(2) An instance of the sovereign selecting the son the most agreeable to him, for enjoying the estate, occurs in England so late as the reign of Henry II. This prince gave seisin to Ralf de Mandevill of the barony of Merwude, because he was a better knight than his elder brother Robert de Mandevill. Madox, Baron. Angl. p. 97.

It is remarkable, that, among the German nations, similar principles, even in the days of Tacitus, had an influence on the rights of succession. 'Inter familiam, & penates, & jura sucessionum, equi traduntur, excipit filius, non ut cetera maximus natu, sed prout ferox bello & melior.' De Mor. Germ. c. 32.

A singular consequence of these usages made its appearance in the law of England. On the devolution of a peerage to heirs female, the King might select the fortunate daughter on whom to bestow it. This privilege, beautiful and interesting, was to grow out of martial customs.

(3) Beneficium, and beneficia, are frequently mentioned in the laws of the barbarians, and, from the description given of them, it is evident, that they were subject to military service. A law of the Longobards has this passage. 'Per multas interpellariones factas ad nos didicimus, milites beneficia sua pallim dirthare.' LL. Longob. lib. 3. tit. 9. l. 9. ap. Lindenbrog. Ancient charters allude to their service, by calling them 'beneficia militaria.' Du Cange, voc. Beneficium. See also a capitulary, an. 807. It is likewise to be observed, that vassalli, a feudal term, denoted, in early times, the possessors of benefices. Of this there are proofs in the years 757, and 807. Du Cange, voc. Vassalli.

It is commonly thought, that the word feudum was not known till about the year 884, when there is certain evidence of its use. Now, this period was, in some countries, posterior
to the perpetuity of the fief, and thus *beneficium* and *feudum* were to express the same thing. In fact, in a constitutions of the Emperor Charles III, who died in 888, *beneficium* and *feudum* are employed alternately in expressing a hereditary grant. In the year 1162, there is a charter by the Emperor Frederic I. to Raimond his nephew, giving him the perpetual grant of a county; and, in this charter, the words *beneficium* and *feudum* are also used alike to express the donation. *Brussel, Usage général des fiefs*, p. 72. 78.

Even in the books of the fiefs, these terms are employed promiscuously in the same sense.

(4) *Chantereau le Feure* contends, that, under the Kings of France of the first and second race, there were only two kinds of landed property, the *domains* of the Prince, and *allodiality*. This notion, which is the foundation of his system, obliges him to assert, that *benefices* were *allodium*. Inferior writers have followed his fancy. For all ingenious men draw after them a train of book-makers, who are more solicitous to defend their opinions, than to understand them.

That *benefices* were not *propriety* or *allodium*, has been just now said. But it may not be improper to produce express proofs of their distinction. The following laws will serve this purpose.

Auditum habemus qualiter & comites & alii homines, qui nostrum beneficium habere videntur, comparant sibi proprietates de ipso nostrum beneficium & faciant servire ad ipfas proprietates servientes nostrorum, de eorum beneficium, & curtes nostrarum remanent defertae, & in aliquibus locis ipfi vicinantes multa mala patiuntur. *Capit. Kar. & Lud. lib. 3. tit. 19.*

Audivimus, quod aliqui reddant beneficium nostrum ad alios homines in proprietatem, & in ipso placito dato pretio comparant ipfas res iterum sibi in alodem; quod omnino cavendum est; quia qui hoc facient, non bene custodiunt sidem, quam nobis promissam habent. Et ne forte in aliqua infidelitate inveniantur, qui hoc facient, deinceps caveant se omnino a talibus, ne a propriis honoribus, a poprio folio, a Dei gratia & nostra, extorreswant. *Capit. Kar. & Lud. lib. 3. tit. 20. ap. Lindenbrog. p. 877.*
The reader may also consult and compare what is collected in *Du Cange*, under *Alodis* and *Beneficium*.

(5) See Chapter 1. and the Notes to it.

(6) Spelman, Lyttleton, Coke, Houard, Madox, Dalrymple, Blackstone, the Judges of Ireland in the case of Tenures upon the commission of defective titles, &c.

In the elaborate treatise on feuds and tenures by Sir Henry Spelman, his whole argument to show that hereditary fiefs were unknown to the Anglo-Saxons, or at least the great weight of it, rests on the idea, that the feudal incidents were consequences of the perpetuity of the fief. Yet it is observable, that this position is constantly supposed, and never proved. He no where evinces, that wardship, marriage, relief, aid, and escheat, were necessary and certain results of the fief, in its condition of perpetuity; and, in the course of this work, if I do not flatter myself, I have produced evidence, from which it is to be concluded, in the clearest manner, that the feudal incidents were the attendants of the fief in all the steps of its progress.

On a foundation of mere froth, this distinguished antiquary has erected a superstructure that is without solidity, and which the slightest effort may overthrow. Yet it is referred to as an impregnable castle; and here, vainly secure, many a combatant has thrown down the gauntlet of defiance. If authors were not generally the unthinking copists of each other, it might provoke laughter to consider the gravity with which an opinion is held out as irrefrangible, that is in a high degree gross with absurdity, and feeble with weakness.


(8) *Du Cange, voc. Militia.*


(10) Sir Ed. Coke. *The Judges of Ireland in the case of*
tenures. Selden, in his titles of honor. Bacon, Discourse on
the laws and government of England, &c.

(11) The use of entail, which was not unknown in the
Anglo-Saxon times, and the succession which obtained in
alodial estates, must have contributed very much to the
establishment of the perpetuity of the fief. LL.Ælfredi, ap.
Wilkins. The general tendency of the fief to this ultimate
step, and the immense power of many of the Anglo-Saxon
nobles, seem also to confirm the idea, that the existence of
its perpetuity might, in some cases, be known in the Anglo-
Saxon times. But presumptive arguments, though of great
weight, are not to be entirely relied upon in questions of
this sort.

There is actual evidence, that Ethelred possessed, as an
hereditary fief and earldom, the territory which had con-
stituted the kingdom of Mercland. He had this grant from King
Alfred, when he married his daughter Æthelfleda. Selden,
Tit. hon. part 2. ch. 5. It is testified out of records, that the
earldom of Leicester was an inheritance in the days of Æthel-
bald; and the regular succession of its earls, for a long period,
is to be pointed out. Camden, Brittan ia by Gibson, vol. 1.
p. 542. It is known from old historians of credit, that Deire-
land and Bernicia were Saxon earldoms, which were not only
feudal, but inheritable. Tit. hon. part 2. ch. 5.

The grant of Cumberland by King Edmund to Malcolm
King of Scotland, was also feudal and inheritable; and this
appears from the Saxon chronicle, and from the following
version of the terms employed in it, 'Eadmundus Rex totam
Cumberland praedavit & contrivit, & commendavit cam
Malcolmo Regi Scotiae, hoc pacto quod in auxilio sibi
Derryn. ad LL. Anglo-Sax. p. 7. The expression commend-
dare, indeed, is said by Spelman not to mean a feudal
homage. Feuds and tenures, p. 35. But the original Saxon
evinces this sense; and, in fact, the word commendare,
notwithstanding of this learned glossographer, is used with the
utmost propriety to express a feudal homage. Commendare se
alicui, was even the marked expression for faire l'hommage.
à un suzerain. See Du Cange, voc. Commendare & Brussel,
Usage général des fiefs, p. 35. 276.
(12) 'Volumus etiam, ac firmiter praecipimus & concedimus,
ut omnes liberi homines totius monarchiae regni nostrui
praedicti, habeant & tenent terras suas, & possidiones suas
bene, & in pace, libere ab omni exactione injusta, & ab omni
tallagio, ita quod nihil ab eis exigatur vel capiatur, nisi servitium
suum liberum, quod dejure nobis facere debent, & facere
tenetur; & prout statutum est eis, & illis a nobis datum &
concessum, jure haereditario in perpetuum per commune
consilium totius regni nostri praedicti.' LL. Guiliel. c. 55.

It is to be mentioned here as somewhat remarkable, that
the laws of Duke William, and especially those of them which
relate to the feudal institutions, are represented by many
foreign writers, and by our domestic advocates for tyranny, as
the mandates or ordinances of a prince who governed by the
sword. Yet they were parliamentary acts, and bear this
honorable testimony in their bosom.

Leg. vet.

Sciatis me concedisse, & praemiri charta mea confir-
maffe, omnibus baronibus & hominibus meis de Anglia
omnes libertates & bonas leges quasi Henricus Rex Angliae
avunculus meus eis dedit & concedit, & omnes bonas leges
& bonas sufficientes eis concedo quas habuerunt tempore
Regis Eduardi.' p. 310.

(17) Charta libertatum Angliae Regis Hentici II. ap.
(18) Magna Charta Regis Johannis de libertatibus Angliae,

Many important clauses of the great charter relate to the
feudal severities. And, it is worthy of notice, that, from
the slight consideration of these severities, it has proceeded,
that so many writers have described the feudal institutions
as a system intended and formed for oppression. Yet I have clearly shown, that these severities grew out of these institutions from the change of manners; and that the scheme of benefices or fiefs was not only consistent with liberty, but founded in it.


(20) There are laws which bear the name of Edward; but it is acknowledged, on every hand, that their authority is not to be fully trusted. And, in the question treated, they are not of any use, unless it be, perhaps, that they illustrate the existence of fiefs among the Anglo-Saxons. This compilation, however, though posterior to the age of the Conqueror, deserves to be examined with more attention than has hitherto been bestowed upon it. M. Houard, a foreign lawyer, whose acquaintance with Norman customs is more intimate than with those of the Anglo-Saxons, is the latest writer who seems to have made a study of it.

(21) The following very curious law of William the Norman makes express mention of the knight’s fee and knight-service. It does more. It alludes to a prior law which actually established this tenure, and which was the act of William and his parliament. It is, of consequence, a decisive proof of the introduction of the knight’s fee, or of knight-service, by this prince, and of this only.

Statuimus etiam & firmiter praecipimus, ut omnes
comites, & barones, & milites, & servientes, & univeri
liberi homines totius regni nostri praedicti, habeant &
teneant se semper bene in armis, & in equis, ut decet &
opertet, & quod sint semper prompti & bene parati ad
servitium suum integrum nobis expendendum, & peragen-
dum, cum semper opus adfuerit, secundum quod nobis
debent de feodis & tenementis suis de jure facere, & sicut
illis statuimus per commune consilium totius regni nostri
praedicti, & illis dedimus & concedimus in feodo jure
haereditario.’ LL. Grill. c. 58.

(22) ‘Terras militibus ita distribuit, & eorum ordines
ita dispositi, ut Angliae regnum lx millia militum inde-
IN EUROPE.

'finenter haberet, ac ad imperium regis, prout ratio 'poposcerit, celeriter exhiberet.' Ord. Vit. lib. 4.

Sprott, the monk of Canterbury, makes the knight-fees to amount to 60,215, and of these he relates, that 28,115 were in the hands of the clergy. Some writers have made Doomsday-book agree with Ordericus Vitalis, as to the number of knight's fees. But they produce not, so far as I have observed, the passage or passages of that monument, which illustrate this opinion. And, it is difficult to conceive, that it can give a complete satisfaction on this head or topic.


(24) Coke, 1, Institute, sect. 1.
Chapter III.

Section I.

(1) The military plan of the feudal institutions, or an idea of the militia created by fiats, may be seen to the greatest advantage in that curious monument, "the Black Book of the Exchequer," of which it was the object to exhibit, not only a list of the feudal tenants, but of the fees and knights held and provided by them. An article from it, therefore, while it may employ the reflections of the reader, will illustrate the general notion inculcated in the text.

Carta Gervasi Paganelli.

Domino suo dilectissimo Henrico, Regi Angliae & Ducis Normanniae & Aquitaniae, & Comiti Andegaviae, Gervasius Paganellus salutem.

Ifi sunt milites, de quibus vobis debeo servitium.

Petrus de Bremingeham tenet feod. IX. militum.
Giffardus di Tiringeham feod. trium militum.
Henricus de Mohun feodum I. militis.
Ricardus Engaine feodum I. militis.
Robertus de Castreton feodum I. militis.
Paganus de Embreton feodum I. militis.
Manifelinus de Oungenes feod. duorum militum.
Petrus de Stamford feodum I. militis.
Willelmus de Jettiageden feodum I. militis.
Elias de Englefeld feod. III. militum.
Ricardus de Ditton feod. IIII. militum.
Philipus de Hamton feod. II. militum.
Willelmus de Abbenwurthe feodum I. militis.
Willelmus, filius Widonis, feod. III. militum.
Bernardus de Frankelefe feod. IIII. militum.
Gervasius de Berneke feod. IIII. militum.
IN EUROPE.

Willelmus de Bello campo feod. II. militum.
Willelmus de Haggaeg feod. I. m.
Milo de Ringefton feodum I. militis & dimid.
Willelmus Buffare feod. II. militum & dim.
Roberti de Ettington feod. I. militis.
Henricus de Oilli tenebat feodum I. militis.

Haece est summa militiae, de quibus Antecefliores mei
Antecefloribus vestris fecerunt servitium, & ego, vestri
gratia, vobis, scilicet. L.

Et ilii sunt milites, quibus pater meus & ego dedimus
terram de dominio nostro post mortem Henrici, avi vestri,
scilicet,

Henricus de Erdinton feodum I. militis.
Radulfus Maniel feodum I. militis.
Willelmus Paganellus feodum I. militis.
Michael filius Osberti & Willelmus de Lovent. feodum
dimidii militis.
Godwinnus Dapifer tertiam partem I. militis.
Walterus Maniel feodum I. militis.
Petrus de Surcomunt feodum dimidii militis.
Galfridus de Rivilli tertiam partem I. militis.


It is in this form that other vassals of the crown certify, in
this work, the services and the knights they were to furnish.

(1) It was enacted by a law of Henry II. ‘Ut quicunque
habet feodum unius militis, habeat loricam, & cæssidem, &
clypeum, & lanceam.’ Hoveden, an. 1181. The variations
in the nature of the arms to be provided, at different periods,
by vassals and soldiers, are learnedly explained in an author
whom the adorers of tyranny affect to despise, in the manly
and spirited work of Nathaniel Bacon, on the laws and govern-
ment of England.

(2) ‘In universum aestimanti plus penes peditem roboris.’
Tacit. de Mor. Germ. c. 6.

(3) Many writers have observed, that it was William the
Norman who introduced archers into England. But they were
known in the Anglo-Saxon armies. A law of Alfred has these words, 'Si quis alteri digitum unde sagittatur abscederit.

xv fol. comp.' See LL. Alfr. c. 40. as interpreted by Lindenbrogius, in his Glossary, p. 1389. Archery was also of high antiquity in the other states of Europe. See LL. Sal. tit. 31. 1. 6. LL. Ripuar. tit. 7. 1. 7. The English were to excel all nations in the use of the bow, and for far shooting. It was the archers who gained the battles of Creffle, Poictiers, and Agincourt.

"King Edward the third," says Ascham, "at the bataille of Creffle, against Philip the French King, as Gaguinus the French historiographer plainely doth tell, flewe that day all the nobilitye of Fraunce onyle with his archers.

"Such like bataille also fought the noble Prince Edward bezide Poictiers, where John the French Kinge, with his sonne, and in a manner all the peres of Fraunce, were taken, bezides thirty thousand which that daye were slaine, and very few English men, by reason of theyr bowes.

"Kinge Henrye the Ffte, a prince perceffe, and most victorious conquerour of all that ever dyed yet in this parte of the worlde, at the bataille of Agincourt, with seven thousand fightinge men, and yet many of them sicke, being suche archers, as the chronicle fayth, that moft parte of them drewe a yarde, flewe all the chivalrye of Fraunce, to the number of forty thousand and mo, and lost not past twenty-six Englishmen." Toxophilus, or the Schole of Shootinge, p. 112.

(5) "He," says Lyttleton, "which holdeth by the service of one knight's fee, ought to be with the King for eight dayes, well and conveniently arrayed for the warre." Tenures, book 2. ch. 3. See farther Du Cange, voc. Feudum militare. Spelman, voc. Feudum Hauberticum, & Assises de Jerusalem, avec des notes, par Thaumassiere, p. 266.


In England, in the time of Edward III. his army in France, Normandy., and before Calais, bezides the Lords, conluted of 1294 combatants and attendants; and their pay for one year
The year and 131 days amounted to 127201 l. 2 s. 9 d. The following specification of particulars will furnish an idea of the military pay and service of those times.

To Edward Prince of Wales, being in the King's service in Normandy, France, and before Calais, with his retinue, for his wages of war, 20 s. a day. Eleven banerets, every one taking 4 s. a day. 102 knights, each 2 s. a day. 264 esquires, each 12 d. a day. 384 archers on horseback, each 6 d. a day. 69 foot-archers, each 3 d. a day. 513 wellmen, whereof one chaplain at 6 d. a day. One physician, one herald or cryer, 5 ensignes, 25 serjeants, or officers over 20 men, each 4 d. a day. 480 footmen, each 2 d. a day.

To Henry Earle of Lancaster, being in the King's service before Calais, with his retinue, for his wages of war, and one other Earle, each 6 s. 8 d. a day. Eleven banerets, each 4 s. a day. 193 knights, each 2 s. a day. 512 esquires, each 12 d. a day. 46 men at arms, and 612 archers on horseback, each 6 d. a day.

To William Bohun, Earle of Northampton, being in the King's service in Normandy, France, and before Calais, 2 banerets, 46 knights, 112 esquires, 141 archers on horseback. For their wages as above.

To Thomas Hatfield bishop of Durham, 6 s. 8 d. a day. 3 banerets, 48 knights, 164 esquires, 81 archers on horseback, every one taking as above.

To Ralf Baron of Stafford, being in the King's service in the places aforesaid, with 2 banerets, 20 knights, 92 esquires, 90 archers on horseback. Every one taking as above.

SECTION II.

IN rolls of the militia of France in the year 1236, and preceding that period, which were observed by Père Daniel, there were entered military tenants who were marked down for the service of 5 days, and for other proportions of the ordinary service of forty days. And these are proofs, not only of fees in France, but of the fractions of fees. Milice Francoise, p. 55.

This learned author, indeed, not attending to the regulations which made the fractions of a fee give their proportion of the ordinary service, has endeavoured to account for the limited number of days which many tenants were bound to serve, by refined reasonings and conjectures; which show how acutely, and yet how absurdly, a man of ability may employ himself in searching out the truth.*

* "Pour ce qui est de ceux que l'on voit dans les rôles n'être obligés qu'à cinq, qu'à quinze, ou vingt-cinq jours, ce furent des concessions particulières, dont il est difficile de conjecturer la cause; ce fut pour quelque service signalé rendu à l'état, ou peut-être que leurs ancêtres durant les guerres civiles fournirent au Roi leurs châteaux, ou leurs terres à cette condition, ou qu'ils avaient quelque autre obligation qui s'appelait au service ordinaire; comme, par exemple, de faire la garde en certains lieux lorsque l'ennemi approchait. On voit en effet dans ces rôles quelques gentilshommes fiévrés, obligés seulement à faire le guet en certaines occasions dans quelque forteresse.

Une autre raison peut avoir contribué à la réduction du service à un terme plus court qu'il n'était autrefois: C'est que sous la première race, l'empire François était beaucoup plus étendu que sous la troisième. Il fallait aller chercher les ennemis & les rebelles dans la Germanie, & au-delà; il fallait passer les Alpes, ou les Pyrénées, & entrer bien avant en Italie & en Espagne: Par conséquence les expéditions duraient beaucoup plus long-temps que sous la troisième race, sous laquelle le royaume avait des bornes beaucoup plus étroites." Liv. 3. ch. 2.

The wildness of these conjectures does not require to be pointed out minutely, as it will appear from a comparison of the text with this note. Yet I censure not the abilities of this historian. If we could reach the truth in all sciences, we should find, that it is the greatest men who have
Lyttleton, having remarked that the ordinary service of the knight’s fee was forty days, is careful to add, ‘that he, which holds his land by the moiety of a knight’s fee, ought to be with the King twenty days; and that he which holds his land by the fourth part of a knight’s fee, ought to be with the King ten days; and so he that hath more, more; and he that hath less, less.’ Tenures, p. 69.

In a roll, de l’ost de Foix, in the year 1272, there are the following explicit proofs of the fractions of fees, and of the limited service that was to be given for them.

Gauffridus de Baudreville, praesentavit servitium suum per xx dies pro dimidio feodo.

Johannes Morant dicit, quod debet servitium quarti unius militis.

Johannes de Falesia Scutifer dicit, quod tenet dimidia feodum loricæ, pro quo debet, sic dicit, auxilium exercitus & calvacatae quando per Normanniam levatur; aut servitium per xx dies eundo & redeundo; & si servitium dictorum xx dierum captum fuerit, auxilium praedictum non debet capi nec levari. See Brussel, Ussage général des fiéts, p. 174.

In England, the fractions of fiéts are to be proved by almost every article in the Black Book of the Exchequer, and by a multitude of records in Madox; and to these authorities I refer the inquisitive reader.


wandered oftener. The philosopher, who states sentiments of his own, must necessarily be mistaken at times, and is often to reason hypothetically. The author who would catch the general sense and opinions of the world, has no title to travel out of the right path; and, if his errors are frequent, he deserves to be contemptible. It is not so with the wanderings of the inventive and reflecting mind. Though they merit not approbation, they call for respect. The absurdities of the profound are the results of thought and of courage; those of the shallow are the fruits of mere weakness.
(4) See what is said by Mr. Baron Dalrymple, in the
matterly sketch he has given of the history of the alienation of
land, in his comprehensive and learned treatise concerning
feudal property in Great Britain.
(5) Lyttleton, Tenures, lect. 96. Daniel, Hift. de la
milice Françoife, liv. 3.
(6) In the strictness of the feudal regulations, the estate of
the vassal might be forfeited for his neglect of service. But, in
general, it seemed equitable, that a fine only should punish his
disobedience. Bruffel, tome 1. Affifes de Jerufaïem, avec des
notes par Thaumaffièr, p. 267. Etablissements de S. Louis,
liv. 1.

In England, in the Anglo-Saxon times, the forfeiture of the
benefice or a fine, as in the other countries of Europe, was
the punishment of the refractory vassal. The case was the fame
in the Norman period of our history. When the King's sum-
mons ad habendum servitium, was issued, it was expected
that it would be complied with. The following fines and
forfeitures for neglect of service are from records.

The Abbot of Pershore was amerced, for not sending his
knights to serve in the army of Camaron, as he was warned
to do. William de Haftinges fined in £ marks, that he might
have the king's favor, because he did not march at the king's
summonce in the army of Normandy. William, bishop of
Winchelter, fined, or was amerced, in £ marks, because
he was not in the army of Gannock, nor had his service there.
Matthew Turpin was diffifed of his land and serjeanty in
Winterlaw, because he was not in the king's service beyond
sea. Duncan de Laffels was diffifed of three knight's fees
and a half, because he was not with the king in his army
of Scotland, with horses and arms. Roger de Cramavill was
diffifed of his land, because he did not go with the king in
his voyage to Ireland. Malgar de Vavafur was diffifed of his
land, because he neither went with the king into Ireland,
nor made fine for the voyage. Madox, Hift. of the Exche-
book. 1. ch. 5.

(7) Lyttleton, tenures, sect. 95. Du Cange, Gloss. voc.
Scutagium.

In France, it is said, that mercenaries were not employed in considerable numbers, till the reign of Philip the August. In England, it is thought, they were first known under Henry II. From the causes I mention, it is probable, that their use must have been familiar, and even extensive, in both countries, in earlier times.


(10) 'The religious,' says Madox, 'intended that they held all their lands and tenements in frankalmoigne, and not by knight-service. This allegation was used with success by the abbot of Leicester, the prior of Novel-lieu without Staunford, and the abbot of Pippewell.' He cites the records which prove these frauds; and, in another place, appealing also to records, he has these words. 'The abbots of St. Austin had a great success in defrauding the king of his services. The abbot, it seems, had been feoffed to hold by the service of fifteen knights. Of these fifteen, he found means to conceal twelve, and answered to the king with three only.' Baron. Angl. p. 109, 114.

(11) A record of Henry III., says of Richard Crokel, 'Faciet servitium tricesimae partis feodi j militis.' A record of the same prince, says of John Hereberd, 'Faciet servitium sexagesimae partis unius feodi.' Hift. of the Exchequer, vol. 1, p. 650, 651. A variety of instances, to the same purpose, are to be collected.

On the supposition that the fractions of a fee beyond the eight parts, were not properly its members, the demands of service for the thirtieth and the sixtieth parts of a fee, must have been encroachments and severities, against the usual practice and usages of fees. If service, however, was required for such fractions, the assessment of a feuage on the tenants of knight-service would necessarily subject them in their proportion of payments. And the difficulties attending either the exaction of these services, or these payments, must have been infinite.
It is to be confessed, that the giving the thirtieth or the sixtieth part of the service of forty days, which was the usual term of the service of the military tenants, has a strange aspect. Perhaps the grants I mention were not regulated by the usual rules which directed fees. It is well known, that there were tenants in knight-service who were bound to give, not the usual service of forty days, but the attendance of themselves and their knights, both at home and abroad, at all times, and wherever it should be demanded. Even in this view, however, it is difficult to comprehend the regulations which must have governed the fractions of such fees.

But there were also vassals in knight-service whose stipulated time in the field and in expeditions was sixty days. See **Établissements de S. Louis**, p. 23. There might thus, by the agreement of superiors and tenants, be stipulated services for one hundred, two hundred, or any definite number of days whatever. On this principle, it is easy to account for the fractions of fees which gave service for the thirtieth, the sixtieth, or any such proportions of a fee. In this state of the matter, however, the fractions I speak of in the text, though out of the common usage of fiefs, must have been members of the fee.

In the courtly and agreeable introduction to the History of Charles the Fifth, in the **View of the Progress of Society in Europe**, from the subversion of the Roman Empire, to the beginning of the sixteenth century, of which the scheme is so comprehensive, it is remarkable, that, amidst a wide variety of other omissions, there is not even the slightest consideration of knight-service, and the knight’s fee. Yet these circumstances were of a most powerful operation, both with respect to government and manners. I make not this remark to detract from the diligence of an author whose laboriousness is acknowledged, and whose total abstinence from all ideas and inventions of his own, permitted him to carry an undivided attention to other men’s thoughts and speculations; but that, resting on these peculiarities, I may draw from them this general and humiliating, yet, I hope, not unuseful conclusion, that the study and knowledge of the dark ages are still in their infancy. Are we for ever to revel in the sweets of ancient lore? And are we never to dig up the riches of the middle times?
CHAPTER IV.

(1) AMONG the disbursements from the Exchequer of the kings of England, there seems to have been much for the behoof of the knights of honor, whom they retained. This appears from a variety of records in Madox, and accounts for the high charges of the sheriffs for palfreys, saddles, gilt-spurs, peacocks-breasts, silk toises, robes, gloves, steel-caps, swords, and lances. Hist. of the Exchequer, ch. 10.

A pension of L. 40 per annum was given by Edward III. to John Atte Lee, who had been invested with knighthood in auxilium status suius manutenendi; and that Sir Nele Loring might better maintain the honor of knighthood, he granted to him, and his heirs male, L. 20 per annum. An annuity of forty marks was given to Sir John Walsh, by Richard II. to enable him to support this dignity. And other examples to this purpose are to be collected. Ashmole on the Garter, p. 34. See farther Du Cange, voc. Militæ Regis, &c. Differt. 5. sur l'Histoire de St. Louis.

(2) Information concerning the knights retained by the nobles, is not to be found in that abundance which might be expected. In an account of the household expense of Thomas Earl of Leiceter an. 1313, there are charged 70 pieces of blue cloth for his knights, and 28 for the esquires; 7 furs of powdered ermin, 7 hoods of purple, 395 furs of budge for the liveries of barons, knights, and clerks; 65 saffron-colored cloths for the barons and knights; and 100 pieces of green silk for the knights. In this account, there is also a charge of L. 623: 15: 5, as fees to earls, barons, knights, and esquires. Stow, Survey of London, in Strype's edition, vol. i. p. 243. The total expenditure of the Earl of Leiceter for one year, which was 7309, is valued by Mr. Anderson, at L. 21,927 of our money; and from the difference of living, or of the efficacy of money, his expense is made to be equal to L. 103,633. Anderson, Hist. of Commerce, vol. i. p. 153. A board for the knights was one of the establishments of the fifth
Earl of Northumberland. Household-book, p. 319. See farther, 
St. Palaye; tome 1. p. 312. 364.

(3) 'In the nineteenth year of King Henry III.' says 
Madox, 'all the sheriffs of England were commanded, by close 
wrists of the great seal, to make proclamation in their 
respective counties, that all they who held of the king in 
chiet, one knight's fee or more, and were not yet knighted, 
should take arms and get themselves knighted, before the 
next Christmas, as they loved the tenements or fees which 
they held of the king.' Baron. Angl. p. 130. Proclamations 
of this kind were frequent.

(4) The writs to take knighthood expressed often, in their 
boloms, the single knight's fee, as the estate entitling to 
knighthood; and they are useful as ascertaining, at different 
times, the value of the knight's fee. Thus, there are rolls of 
different dates which state the knight's fee at fifteen, twenty, 
thirty, forty, and fifty pounds of yearly valuation. A specific 
ification of such records may be seen in Ashmole, p. 33, and 
Coke, xi. Institute, p. 597. And, it is to be wished, that 
some intelligent person, who has access to the public offices, 
would publish a series of them. From such a work ingenious 
men might derive many advantages.

It is not to be conceived, that the knight's fee which was 
held of a subject, could entitle to knighthood; and yet many 
learned writers have expressed themselves to this purpose. It 
was the knight's fee in capite, or of the crown. This is 
illustrated by the writs of summons to take knighthood. And, 
of this writ, the record which follows, is an example, in 
the usual or regular form.

Rex Vicecomiti Norf. & Suff. salutem. Praecipimus tibi, 
quod, visis litteris istis, per totam bailivam clamari facias, 
quod omnes ibi qui de nobis tenent in capite feudum unius 
militis, vel plus, & milites non sunt, citra festum natalis 
Domini anno regni nostri decimo nono, arma capiant & se 
milites fieri faciant, sic ut tenementa suas quae de nobis tenent 
diligunt. Clasp. 19. H. 3. m. 25. dorfo. ap. Madox, Hift. of 
the Exchequer, vol. 1. p. 510.

(5) In the reign of Henry III. the honor of Dudley, and
other lands of Roger de Sumery, were taken into the king's
possession, with all the chattels found on them; because Roger
did not come to be girt with the belt of knighthood. Bar. Angl.
p. 131. For the same reason, the same prince seized the
estates of Gilbert de Sampford and William de Montagu. And,
in the twentieth year of Edward I. the sheriff of Kent was
commissioned to seize the lands of such persons as did not
appear to take knighthood, and to answer at the exchequer

The neglect of the sheriffs to distrain the lands of those who
were entitled to knighthood, and refused it, was often to
subject them in amerclamments and punishments. And, what is
remarkable, it appears that the command of the King's writ
to his officers was at times accompanied with much severity,
in case they should be negligent of their duty, or be tempted
to connivance by bribes. This is illustrated by the evidence of
the following writ to the sheriff of Northamptonshire.

Rex Vicecom. North. salutem. Praecipimus tibi quod, sicut
teipsum & omnia tua diligis, omnes illos in baliva tua, qui
habeant viginti libras terreae, distringas, quod se milites
faciendo somo, citra nativitatem Sancti Johannis Baptistae
proxime futur. Sciturus pro certo, quod si, pro munere, vel
aliqa occasione, aliaum relaxationem eis feceris, vel aliam
respectum dederis, nos ita graviter ad te capiemus, quod
omnibus diebus vitae suae te fentes esse gravatum. T. R. apud
Wyndesor decimo quarto die Aprilis. Clauz. 28. H. 3. m. 12.

Thus, by a strange fate, chivalry was to grow into an
imposition and a tax. It is a wild circumstance, and shows the
unfortunate counsels, and the perverie humor of Charles I.
that this unamiable method of raising money was revived in his
reign. An act of tyrannical insolence was thus founded upon
the pretext of an ancient custom. Charles lived to abolish the
oppression he had revived, and to ordain, that no person
whatever should be compelled to take the order of knighthood,
or to undergo any fine or trouble for not having taken it. Stat.
Car. I. au. 1640, cap. 20.

(6) In the reign of Henry III. Bartholomew Fitz-William
gave v marks to have respite for taking knighthood; and Thomas de Moleton, and several others, gave fines on the same account. Hist. of the Exch. vol. i. p. 509. In the same reign, Robert de Menevil paid v marks for a respite of knighthood for two years; and Peter Fouden 48 shillings and 8 pence for the respite of three years. And, for a suspension from knighthood for the same period, John de Droakensford, in the days of Edward III. paid ten pounds. Ashmole, p. 33.

The refusing to take knighthood, when not punished by the seizure of the land, was subjected to fines and amercements, which seem to have been arbitrary. In the time of Edward III. William, the son of Gilbert de Alton, paid twenty shillings for not appearing and receiving knighthood, according to the command of the King's proclamation; and the fine of forty shillings was set upon Simon de Bradeney, Thomas Trivet, and John de Neirvote. In the days of Henry IV. Thomas Pauncefoot paid four nobles for this neglect or contempt. Ashmole, p. 34. See farther Baron. Angl. p. 131, 132. Camden, Introd. to the Britan. p. 246, 247.
CHAPTER V.
SECTION I.

(1) "Fid interdum," says the old dialogue concerning the exchequer, "ut imminente vel insurgente in regnum hostium machinatione, decernat rex de singulis feodis militum summam aliquam solvi, marcam scilicet, vel libram unam; unde militibus stipendia vel donativa succedant. Mavuit enim princeps stipendiarios, quam domesticos bellicos apponere causibus. Hec itaque summa, quia nomine scutorum solvitur, scutagium nuncupatur." Dial. de Scaccar. lib. i. sed. 9.

It was according to the number of their fees that the barons and tenants in capite were charged with scutage. Each knight's fee paid a determined sum to the King. And, as the vassals of the crown were charged with the full payments for their fees, they had recourse for compensation to their knights, from whom they claimed a scutage in proportion to the fees held and possessed by each. The king applied to his vassals, and his vassals applied to their tenants.

(2) It is commonly conceived, on the authority of Alexander de Swereford, an accurate observer of records, that, in England, there was no scutage or tax on-knight-fees before the reign of Henry II. There is great probability, however, that the scutage preceded the age of this prince. It is to be thought that it was coeval with the use of mercenaries; but the period of the introduction of these is not, I believe, to be ascertained with precision.

In the second year of the reign of Henry II. there was a scutage for the army of Wales. It was assessed only on the prelates who held their lands in knight-service. They paid at the rate of xx s. for each knight's fee. There was, in the fifth year of the same reign, a second scutage for the army of Wales; and it was assessed not only on the prelates, but on
all the tenants by knight-service indiscriminately. They paid two marks for each knight’s fee. In the thirty-third year of the same prince, there was a footage for the army of Galway. It was xx s. per fee. Under Richard I. a footage for Wales was attested at cs. per fee. Madox, Hist. of the Exchequer, vol. 1.
p. 620. & seq.

I know that the first mode of taxation in England was not the tax on knight’s fees, of which I now speak. In the Anglo-Saxon times, Danegeld was an imposition on the landed property of England; and it was established with the consent of the people in the wittenagemor or national council. The earlier Norman princes appear also to have levied this tribute; but, in doing so, they probably exercised an illegal stretch of prerogative.

It was as mercenaries came to be employed, and as the spirit of the feudal institutions declined, that the footage, or the tax on knight-fees, was to prevail. To this tax the Magna Charta gave a blow, which, in time, was to be decisive. The grant of money by the people succeeded to it. Subsidies, tenths, and fifteenths, were adopted, and continued long. The tax of Danegeld was only intended as a temporary expedient. The footage led the way to a regular, a constant, and a formal method of taxation.


(4) It is an important circumstance, that the free gifts of cities and towns should have grown into taxes. In France, in the year 1231, the burgesses of S. Omer paid to S. Louis the sum of 1500 livres; and this payment was called a donum; a proof that it was not exigible as a duty. It is likewise evident, that, in France, such presents had been common, and had grown into taxes. Brusel, Usage général des Fiefs, liv. 2. ch. 32.

In England, it is clear, from a variety of records produced or appealed to in Madox, that the word donum must also have been used to express gifts that were free. Hist. of the Exchequer, ch. 17. After mercenaries were known, these gifts ceased to be free, and were termed tallages. And of tallages, both in
England and France, there are frequent examples in the books I have just cited. See farther Du Cange, voc. Donum.

As kings received gifts which they were to convert into tallages, so the lords and superiors, who were honored with similar presents, did not fail to change them also into taxes or customs. Du Cange, voc. Tulliare.

What is curious in a peculiar degree, the distant source of these usages, and the spirit of them too, while manners retained their simplicity, may be seen in the following words of Tacitus, of which this note may serve as an illustration. 'M's est civilitatis, ultror auctarium conferre principibus vel 'armatorum vel fragum, quod pro honore acceptum, etiam 'necessitate subvenit.' De Mor. Germ. c. 15.

A distinction of great moment, as to civil liberty, deserves here to be remarked. During the pure times of the Gothic manners, the towns and boroughs made gifts at their own pleasure. When these manners were altered, they were tallaged at the pleasure of the crown and the barons. The former times were times of liberty; the latter of oppression.

When Dr. Brady, therefore, Mr. Hume, and a multitude of writers, enlarge on the low and insignificant state of the towns, and, treating their inhabitants as little better than slaves, infer thence, the original despotism of our government, they are only active to betray their inattention. It is strange, that men of genius and talents, should take so lame a survey of this subject. Of the two states or conditions of society which prevailed, they have no conception. They knew only the history of towns in their last situation, and could not perceive that the oppressions they saw had only a reference to the change of manners, and the breaking down of the feudal system, which affected, indeed, the administrations of princes, and the conduct of the nobles to their vassals, but did not alter the established form of our government.

From the Magna Charta, these authors presume to date the commencement of our liberty; while that monument is a proof, the most indubitable, of the encroachments which had been made upon liberty, since it was its great purpose to destroy them.
(5) 'Nullum scutagium vel auxilium ponatur in regno nostro, nisi per commune consilium regni nostri, nisi ad corpus nostrum redimendum, & ad primogenitum filium nostrum minorem faciendum, & ad filiam nostram primogenitam semel maritandum; & ad hunc non fiat nisi rationabile auxilium.' Magna Charta, Reg. Joan. ap. Spelm. Cod. vet. p. 369.

The scutagium was the tax on lands held in knight-service. The auxilium was any tax whatever. I am sensible, that, after the Magna Charta, there are instances of taxes which were levied without the concurrence of the great council of the nation; but these were violations of the constitution, and of liberty. For, from that period, the legal method of afflicting government was by a parliamentary subsidy or assault. The violent exactions of several princes, posterior to the Magna Charta, are, indeed, held out, by many authors, as descriptive of the despotism of our government. But of such authors, it is to be said, that they cannot distinguish our constitution from the administrations of our princes. The madness or the folly of a King may disfigure our government by wild, encroaching, and unhappy exertions; but from these we must infer nothing against those principles of liberty upon which it is founded.


The Magna Charta was explanatory of the ancient law and custom, as well as corrective of abuses and tyranny. It is to be regretted, that, notwithstanding all which has been written concerning this invaluable record, there should yet, at this late hour, be desired a complete illustration of it. Much, I know, has already been executed towards this end; but, if
I am not greatly deceived, there remains still more to be done. And this, I imagine, will appear clearly to the philosophical reader, who will attend to it, in its connexion with history, law, and manners.

**SECTION II.**


(4) Père Daniel mentions an array in France in 1302, which called out *tous les Français nobles*, & non nobles, de quelque condition qu'ils soient, qui auront âge de 18 ans & plus, jusqu'à l'âge de 60 ans. He adds, *Ce n'est pas à dire pour cela que tous marchassent en effet: Mais ceux que le roi commettoit pour faire ces levées, prenoient de chaque ville, & de chaque bourg & village le nombre d'hommes, & tels hommes qu'ils jugeoient à propos en ces occasions.*

*Hist. de la Milice Françoise*, vol. 1. p. 57.

In England, in the sixteenth year of King Edward II. a commission issued out of the exchequer to Geoffrey de St. Quyntyn and John de Kalthorp, ordering them to raise speedily, in every town and place in the wapentake of Dykeryng, as well within the franchises as without, all the defensible men that were between the age of sixteen and sixty, as well of gentz d'armes as of foot, each man being duly arrayed, according to his estate, and to put the said men in array by hundreds and twenties, and being so arrayed, to lead them to the King at York, by such a day, to act against the Scots. The like commissions issued out of the exchequer, to
John de Belkthorp and Geoffrey Stull, for the wapentake of
Buckros, and to other persons, for other wapentakes."

An example of an array, in the reign of Edward I. is also
remarked by Mr. Madox, and it proceeded on writs from that
prince to all the sheriffs of England *. It has been thought,
that King John's reign afforded the first instance of an array.
But I think it highly probable, that arrays were prior to his
age. Mr. Hume had met with no commission of array till the
reign of Henry V. and this circumstance could not fail of

Arrays for sailors were practiced after the same method as for
soldiers. The custom is still retained in the press of seamen.
It is somewhat remarkable, that this illegal power is yet
suffered to remain with the crown. If exerted as to soldiers, it
would seem the highest tyranny. In apology for it, authors
have said, that it is difficult to discover an expedient to answer
its purposes, without greater danger to liberty.

(5) Daniel, Hist. de la Milice Françoise, liv. 3. ch. 8.
tions on the more ancient Statutes, p. 378. 380.
I am disposed to believe, that it was chiefly the enormous
dissoluteness and irregularity of manners introduced by the
mercenaries, which deformed England so much in the reign
of Edward I. that the ordinary judges were thought unable to
execute the laws. This, would seem, made Edward invent
a new tribunal of justice, which had power to traverse the
kingdom, and to inflict discretionary punishments on offenders.
Speelman. Gloss. voc. Traibailson. Yet a court so inquisitorial
was a daring insult to a free nation, and infinitely a greater
 calamity, than all the disorders which prevale!. That country
is miserable where the discretion of a judge is the law.

(6) Daniel, Hist. de la Milice Françoise, liv. 4. The
archers were called frank, because they were free from taxes.

* In his writ to each sheriff, after having ordered the array, and expressed
his meaning, he subjoins these words. ''Et hoc, scire indignationem
nonom vivere & te indemptum servare volueris, nullatenus omittas.'

(7) 3. Institute,
(9) 2. Institut, p. 3.
(11) Sir John Fortescue, who resided some time in France with Prince Edward, the son of Henry VI. and who wrote there his excellent treatise, 'De Laudibus Legum Angliae,' describes, from actual knowledge, the exorbitant insolence of the French soldiery, and the miserable condition of the people. The picture he draws is too long for insertion in this place. But, though the features are strong, there is no reason to suspect the likeness. A native of Great Britain, in attending to it, must feel, in a lively degree, the happy advantages of our free constitution.

CHAPTER VI.

(2) Tacitus alludes to the historic songs of the old Germans, of which it was doublets the purpose to record the migrations of tribes, and the exploits of chieftains. Of such songs, there were many in the eighth century; and Charlemagne was fond of committing them to his memory. Eginhard, Vit. Car. Magn. c. 29. Of the celebrated Attila, it is said, that he had constantly his poets in waiting, and that their verses in honor of his exploits, were a part of the entertainment of his court. Priscus, p. 67, 68. In all rude times, the character of the bard is in repute, and attended with distinctions. This character was not peculiar to our ancestors, as some writers have fancied; for we find it among the Greeks, and in other nations. It is peculiar to the early state of society, when the passions are warm, and language imperfect.

(2) It is a common notion, that the poets and Troubadours were only to be found in France and Italy. They were frequent, however, in all the countries of Europe; and they hastened, by their rivalship, the progress of literature. Henry III. had a poet or Troubadour in his service, on whom he bestowed a regular pension. This circumstance is to be gathered from the following record. "Rex thesaurario & camerarii suis salutem. Liberate de thesaurio nostro, dilecto nobis Magistro Henrico verificato centum solidos, qui ei debentur de arreragis stipendiorum suorum. Et hoc fine dilatione & difficultate faciatis, licet scaccarium sit clausum. T. R. apud Wodstoke xiiiij die Julii." 35. H. 3. ap. Madox, Hist. of the Exceq. vol. 1. p. 391.

There is a commission of Henry VI. De Ministralis propter solatium regis providendis, from which it is to be gathered, that the recitation or chanting of songs, was an amusement in repute and fashion. Rymer, 34. Henry VI. The fifth Earl of Northumberland had his minstrels and players; and it was a qualification of his almoner, that he was "a maker of interludes." Household-book, p. 44. 85. 93. 331. 339.
The reader may consult farther on this subject, an author, who is not more distinguished by the soundness of his knowledge, than by the classical simplicity of his language, Mr. Warton, in his History of English poetry.

(3) Histoire Littéraire des Troubadours, par M. l'Abbé Millot.

(4) It is to be observed, that it was the married women chiefly who vied in the merits of their poets and Troubadours. An interesting figure, as well as the talent of rhyming, was necessary to the Troubadour; and it was his constant aim to gain the heart or the person of his patroness. Perhaps it would be to refine too much, if one should consider the present infidelity of the married women in France, as a relic of this usage, and the corruptions of chivalry.

Of the Duke of Orleans, the brother of Charles VI, there is a pleasant notice in Brantome, which illustrates very aptly the profligate manners introduced by sires and chivalry. 'C'étoit un grand débaucheur de dames de la cour, et des plus grandes: Un matin en ayant une couchée avec lui dont le mari vint par hasard pour lui donner le bon jour, il caché la tête de cette dame, et lui découvrit tout le corps, la laissant voir et toucher nue à ce mari à son bel aise, avec défense sous peine de la vie d'ôter le linge du visage... Et le bon fut que le mari étant la nuit d'après couché avec sa femme, lui dit que M. d'Orléans lui avait fait voir la plus belle femme nue qu'il eut jamais vue; mais, quant au linge, qu'il n'en savait que dire, ayant toujours été cachée sous le linge. It is added, 'De ce petit commerce, fortit ce brave et vaillant bâtarde d'Orléans, Comte de Dunois, le sottien de la France & le fléau des Anglois.' Brantome, ap. St. Foix, Eff. hiffor. vol. 1. 319.

(5) See, in St. Palaye, le voeu du Paon ou du Faisan, & les Honneurs de la Cour.


(7) This invention is ascribed to William the ninth Earl of Poitou. 'Ce fut un valeureux & courtois chevalier, mais grand trompeur de dames.' Hif. des Trou. tom. 1. p. 47.

(8) Le Moine de Fossan, a Troubadour, composed a
song, in which he thus speaks of the Virgin. 'Je suis devant elle à genoux, les mains jointes, comme son très humble esclave, plein d’ardeur dans l’attente de ses regards amoureux, & d’admiration dans la contemplation de son beau corps & de ses agréables manières.' Hist. des Troub. tom. 2. p. 225.

(9) Deudes de Prades, a troubadour, has this sentiment: 'Je ne voudrois pas être en Paradis, à condition de ne point aimer celle que j’adore.' Hist. de Troub. tom. 1. p. 321.

(10) It was said wittily, but not without reason, by the Troubadour Raimond de Castelnaud: 'Si Dieu sauve pour bien manger & avoir des femmes, les moines noirs, les moines blancs, les Templiers, les Hospitaliers, & les Chanoinies auront le Paradis; & Saint Pierre & Saint André font bien dupes d’avoir tant souffert de tourments, pour un paradis qui coute si peu aux autres.' Hist. des Troub. tom 3. p. 78.

It was in consequence of the depraved manners of the clergy, that, in England, the personage who, in the season of Christmas festivity, was to preside in the houses of the nobility over riotous mirth and indecent indulgencies, was termed 'the abbot of misrule.' This character appears in the establishment of the fifth Earl of Northumberland, an. 1512. Household-book. p. 344. See also Dr. Percy’s notes to this record.

In Scotland, the same character or personage seems to have been still more common, and even so familiar in the lowest ranks of civil life, that he grew to be a nuisance in towns and boroughs. His appellation there was, 'the abbot of unreason;' and, when the severity and starchness of the reformation forced and deformed this country with the hypocritical preciseness, and the dismal formality which have not yet left it, an act of parliament was thought expedient to suppress and abolish an office so highly licentious and profane. 6. Parl. Mann 1555.


(12) Joinville, Histoire de S. Louis, p. 32.

(13) 'Si quis dixerit conjugi, malam licentiam dando, vade & concumbre cum tali homine; aut si dixerit aliqui
This law evinces the antiquity and the heinousness of the practice alluded to; but, in posterior times, the fashion was thought of more lightly, and too prevalent to be punished with severity. See some curious information in Du Cange, voc. Cugus, Cucucia, Licentia Mala, Uxorare.

(14) The Gynaecum, by which the apartment was expressed where the women were kept to work at the needle, and other domestic employments, came to signify a brothel, or place of debauch, from the use that was made of it. Du Cange, voc. Gynaecum. Over the doors of a palace which belonged to Cardinal Woolsey, there was written, Domus Meretricum Domini Cardinalis. It has been said, indeed, that Meretricies flood of old for Lustrices; and the advocates for the chastity of the Cardinal contend, of consequence, that this inscription only served to direct to his laundry. But, I am afraid, that this plea will not hold. For the terms were convertible; and the women who acted in the laundry, and who were employed in working in linen and tapestry, were in general the convenient mistresses, to whom their lords paid a temporary worship. It was from some mistakes of this sort, that, in the reign of Elizabeth, there was an order, that no laundresses, nor women called victuallers, should come into the gentlemen's chambers of Gray's Inn, 'unless they were full forty years of age.' Dugdale, Orig. Jurid. p. 286.

(15) Ranulph. de Hengham, Summa Magna, cap. 2. and Selden's notes to it.

(16) In the Britannia, in the description of Surrey, there is this notice. 'Hamo de Catton held Cattefshull-manour by being Marshal of the whores when the King should come into these parts.' Camden, vol. i. p. 181. In the reign of Edward II. Thomas de Warblynton held the manour of Shirefeld
in Hampshire, of the King in chief, by the serjeanty of being Marshal of the whores in the King's household, and of dismembering malefactors condemned, and of measuring the galones and buthels in the King's household. The words of the record are, 'Tenuit in capite, die quo obit de Domino E. uterque Angliae patre regis nunc, per sargantiam essendi Mareschallus de meretricibus in hospicio regis, & dimum brate malefactors judicatos, & menfurare galones & bullulos in hospicio regis.' Pas. Fines 1. Edw. III. Rot. 8. a. ap. Bar. Angl. p. 242.

(17) The vassal forfeited his estate in the following cases: Si dominum cucurbitaverit (id est, uxorem ejus stupraverit,) vel turbiter cum ea leserit. Si cum filia domini concubuerit, vel nepte ex filio, vel cum nupta filio, vel cum forore domini sui in capillo, id est, in domo sua manente.' Lib. Feud. ap. Spelman Gio. voc. Felonia.

The words in capillo, allude to a peculiarity in the Germanic and Gothic manners, which deserves to be explained. All virgins wore their hair uncovered, and with ornaments. Married women concealed their hair, and covered their heads. The ornaments for the hair were many. And, in the progress of time, it was not the hair of their heads only, that the women were curious to deck out. The mother of the fair Gabrielle being assassinated, her body lay, for many hours, exposed, in a public manner, to the spectator, and in a posture so exceedingly indecent, that it discovered a strange mode of affectation. In this last fashion, which was probably introduced in the decline of chivalry, the ornaments were ribands of different colors; and, it seems to have been peculiar to women of rank and condition. St. Foix, Eff. Hist. vol. 4. p. 82.

In general, it merits remark, that the veneration for their hair entertained by the Germans and their posterity, was very great, and gave rise to a multitude of customs. It was a mark of refined attention in a person to present a lock of his hair to a friend on saluting him; it was to say, that he was as much devoted to him as his slave. To take away the hair of a conspirator, was one of the most afflicting parts of his punishment,
To give a slave the permission of allowing his hair to grow was to offer him his freedom. *Ducange and Spelman*, vol. Capitul. William Earl of Warrene, in the age of Henry III. granted and confirmed to the church of St. Pancrace of Lewes, certain lands, rent, and tithe, and gave a sine of them *per capillos capitii sui, & fratris sui Radulfi de Warr. quos abscidit de capitis suis cum cultello ante altare.* Mag. rot. 24. *Henry III. ap. Madox. Hist. of the Exchequer. Prefatory Epist.* p. 30. This must have been a compliment in the highest style of flattery; and the clergy of St. Pancrace must have been enchanted with the politeness of this nobleman.

There seems something wild and romantic in such usages; yet they produced the locket and the hair-ring of modern times; and we smile not, no, are surprised, that these should teach us to employ our moments of softness in melancholy recollections of absent beauty, or departed friendship. What is distant and remote, affects us with its ridicule. What is present and in practice, escapes our censure. In the one instance, we act with the impartiality of philosophers; in the other, we are carried away by our passions and our habitudes.


(19) There is evidence of public or licensed stews in England in *Stat. 2. Henry VI. cap. 1. in Cornell, vol. Stews, Spelman, vol. Stuba, and in Coke, 3. Institute, ch. 98.* Henry II. gave his privilege to the stews-houses of Southwark, according to the old customs which had been used there time *out of mind.* And patents confirming their liberties were granted by other princes. *Stow, in Strype's edit. vol. 2. p. 7.* In Normandy, there was a *cufus meretricum,* and this officer seems to have been known in the different countries of Europe. *Ducange, vol. Cufus meretricum,* & *Panagator.*

It has frequently been a subject of inquiry among politicians, whether public stews, under proper regulations, with a view to the health of individuals, and the peace of society, be not an advantageous institution. In some states of Europe, a tolerated or authorized prostitution is known at this day. And, by the Code of Genroo laws, this institution was acknowledged as
falluty; and prostitukes forming a kmmunity were, in Hindoostan, an object of care to the government. I avoid, however, to enter into a question of such infinite delicacy. It is dangerous in a state to give the slightest stab to morality. Yet, I cannot but observe, that, in the most cultivated nations, there are laws and regulations which would morality more severely than could be done by an authorized prostitution, and with less of utility to mankind.

(20) The licensed stew-houses in the reign of Henry VII. were the Boar's-head, the Cross-keys, the Gun, the Castle, the Crane, the Cardinal's-hat, the Bell, the Swan, &c. Sir Edward Coke has preserved this information, 3. Institute, p. 205. In the time of Edward VI. Bishop Latimer complained and preached to the following tenor: 'There is more open whoredom, more "stated" whoredom, than ever was before. For God's sake, let it be looked to.' Sow, in Strype's edit. vol. 2. p. 8.

(21) 3. Institute, p. 206.

(22) Spelman voc. Stubbe, 3. Institute, p. 205.

CONCLUSION.

I presume not to think that I have exhausted the topics I treat in this volume. For, what subject does not stretch to infinity? But it has been my particular care to go back to the sources, and to express the beginnings of law, government, and manners; and I have been solicitous to open up, with a due advantage, the original ideas, which I have ventured to strike out, and which, perchance, may attract the notice of the ingenious and the learned. Yet, when I consider what many great men have written before me concerning human affairs, I know not, whether it ought to flatter my pride, or to fill me with shame, that I, too, have yielded to my reflections and my sentiments; and, though in the obscurity of a private station, and in the fervor of youth, have presented to my fellow-citizens this aspiring fruit of my studies and ambition.
APPENDIX.

No I. P. 182.

ARTICLE I. Charta Dotis quam Folradas constituit Helenae Sponsae suae.

In Deinomine. Dulcisima sponfa mea Helenae. Ego enim Folradas filius quondam Eriperti ex genere Fran-ccorun, et modo habitator sum in pago Pinnensi. Dum non est incognitum qualiter per voluntatem Dei vel parentum quondam tuorum te despansavi et carnali con-jugio sociari dispono, propter de dono tibi He. sponfa mea in honore pulchritudinis tuae in die nuptiali dotem dignam atque aptam, hoc est, manus meos infra vicum Pinnensem, qui mihi pertinet et ex comparatione event et data mea pecunia comparavi. Trado tibi ipsos manus cum omni integritate suae et domum dignam ad commanendum exquisitam causam unam confriam, cum omnibus utensilibus et valis, cum omnibus adjacentiis ad ipsos manus aspicientibus vel pertinentibus, cum terris et vineis, pomis, cum omnibus quae super se habentur vel ad ipsam curtem de Vico pertinent, et quae habere visus sum, vel inantea Deo adjuvante ibidem parare vel conquire ad potuero, in integrum ista omnia superius comprehensa, si nos Deus carnali conjugio sociari voluerit, in die nuptiali tibi dono, trado, atque transcribo ad possidendum, ut quicquid exinde facere volueris, liberam et firmi-

ART. II. A reciprocal Grant. Roger Pit and his Wife grant and release to the Prior of Brommore a Tenement held in Dower; and the Prior grants a yearly Rent for the Life of the Wife.

SCIANT praefentes et futuri, quod haec est carta Cyrographata, anno ab Incarnatione Domini Millefimo CCXLIII facta, inter Dominum S. Priorem et Conventum Brummore ex una parte, et Rogerum de la Putte et Editham uxorem suam ex altera. Scilicet, quod praedictus Rogerus et Editha uxor sua, tradiderunt, et concesserunt, et quietum clamaverunt, ad vitam ipsorum, totum tenementum quod dictae Edithae evenit in dotem, de Hugone Fichet, in villa de Brummore, cum omnibus pertinentiis. Et dicti Prior et Conventus tenentur
APPENDIX. 299


ART. III. A Release of a yearly Rent in Dower.

OMNIBUS Christi fidelibus ad quos praeferens scriptum pervenerit, Nicholaa quae fui uxor Willelmi de Nufford in Bereford salutem in Domino. Noveritis mel pura et legitima viduaetate mea, relaxsae et omnino pro me et haeredibus meis vel assignatis quietum claßae Dominò Fulconi de Lucy Militi, et haeredibus suis vel assignatis, totum Jus et clameum quod habui vel aliquo modo habere potui, in tribus solidatis redditus quos ab eodem Domino Fulcone recipere solembam nomine Dotis meae per annum, ad feßum Sancti Michaelis, de tenemento quod Johannes de Merehill tenet in Bereford; Ita quod nec ego nec haeredes mei

No II. P. 192.

Art. I. A Feoffment in Frankmarriage of Land, a Capital Mansjon, &c. made to a Man with the Daughter of the Feoffer.

Sciunt omnes tam praefentes quam futuri, quod ego Petrus de Poketorp dedi et concessi, et hac mea praefenti carta confirmavi, Heroeio filio Willemi filii Jole, in Maritagio cum Matilda filia mea, duas bovatas terrae in Snape, cum pertinentiis; illas scilicet quae sunt remociores a Sole, in dimidia carucata terrae quam Robertus filius Radulfi michi dedit pro Humagio et Servicio meo; Et capitale Manfuram meam in eadem villa; Et gardenum meum ultra aquam; et pratum meum apud Sutham Kelde; Et praeterea apud Joles Croft tres acras terrae et dimidiam; Illi et haereditibus qui de praedicta filia mea exibunt: Tenendum de me et de haereditibus meis in feudo et haereditate, libere, et quiete: Faciendo forinfeicum servicium, quantum pertinet duabus bovatis terrae in feudo quo duodecim carucatae terrae faciunt feudum unius Militis. Et ex incremento dedi ei servicium duarum boyarum terrae in Torneton

ART. II. A Feoffment, or Gift of Land in Frankmarriage with the Sister of the Donor.

ART. I. A Grant of Privilege and Protection from King Edward to the Abbey of Bury St. Edmund.


ART. II. A Mandate of Protection from King Henry the Second for the Abbey of Battell.

ART. III. Fines made to Kings, that they would remit their Resentments and Indignation.


ART. IV. Fines for Favor, and Protection.


Radulfus Mudac debet l. l. and ij s. and viij d. pro habendo amore regis Ricardi. *Mag. Rot. 11. J. Rot. 14.*

SCIANT hoc scriptum visuri, quod cum die Dominica proxima ante Cathedram Sancti Petri, Inter Dominum R. de Clyfford ex parte Comitis Marescalli, Et Dominum Ricardum Basset et Martinum Hostiarium, ex parte Comitis Glocestriæ, super quibusdam excessibus tractatus haberetur; Tandem inter eos sic convenit. Vide licet quod Homines dictorum Comitum, fidelem et firmam Treugam ex utraque parte, a dicta die Dominica usque in sexdecim dies proximo sequentes inviolabiler obser- vabant. Et Dominus R. de Clyfford, die Lunæ proximo post dictum Festum, ad Comitem Glocestriæ apud Cirencestriam accedet, ad formandum pacem inter praedictos Comites. Et si alter eorum tunc venire nequiverit, hoc alteri parti die Veneris proximo praecedente vel die Sabbati, siclicet Comiti Glocestriæ apud Fay- ford, vel Domino Rogerio de Clyfford apud Suttun juxta Banneburiam denuncietur. Ad hoc si Morgan filius Hoel dictam Treugam pro se et Hominibus suis tenere voluerit, recipiatur in ipsum; Quod si noluerit, tunc durantibus Treugis habitabit in montanis, nec in aliquod Castrum vel Burgum ipse vel sui interim admittentur. Haec autem firmiter, et absque dolo, et omni cavillatione, Dominus R. de Clyfford et W. de Lucy ex parte Comitis Marescalli, et Dominus R. Basset et M. Hostiarius pro Comite Glocestriæ, affidavitur. In hujus autem rei testimonium, praefens scriptum in modum Cirographi et compositum;

N° V. P. 219.

ART. I. An Injunction not to torney by Henry III.


ART. II. A Prohibition of Torneaments by Edward III.

REX Vicemcomiti Lincolniae salutem. Praeципimus tibi, firmiter injungentes, quod statim viis praefentibus, per totam balliviham tuam, in Civitateibus, Burgis, et locis aliis quibus melius videris expedire, publice
proclamari, et districte ex parte nostra facias inhiberi, ne qui sub forisfactura vitae et membrorum, terrarum et tenementorum, honorum et catalorum suorum, ac omnium illorum quae nobis forisfacere poterunt, torea mente, justas aut burdeicias facere, seu aliter infra ballivam tuam ad arma ire praefumant, sed se praeparent quanto potentius poterunt, ad proliciscendum nobilis cum in obsequium nostrum ad partes Scociae, ad rebellionem et nequicism quorundam Scotorum rebellium et proditorem nostrorum, jam contranos prodicio- naliter insurgencium, viriliter, cum Deo et ipsorum adjutorio, reprimendam; ita quod omnes homines ad arma de balliva tua, quilibet videlicet juxta exigencia Status sui, sint ad nos cum equis et armis apud Karliolum, in quindena Nativitatis Sancti Johannis Baptillae proximo futura ad ultimum, ad apponendum una nobiscum, et cum confamilibus fidelibus nostris, quos tunc nobiscum ibidem adehfe contigerit, super negociis istum terrae nostrae Scociae tangentibus, prout nobis Altissimus duxerit inspirandum confilium et juvenem. Praecipimus eciam tibi, quod si qui vel qui torneamenta, justas, aut burdeicias, contra hanc inhibitionem nostram, infra ballivam tuam facere, seu aliter ad arma ire praefumant vel praefumat, tunc corpora ipsorum vel ipsius, quos vel quem delinquentes vel delinquentem inveneris in hac parta, sine dilatatione capias, et in prigona nostra salvo cuflodias, donec aludi inde praecipeperimus. Et nos de hiis quae facienda duxeris in praemissis, in crasino Sanctae Trinitatis proximo futuro reddas distincte et aperte certiores, hoc breve nobis remittentes. T. Rege apud Wolveseye vi die Aprilis.

N° VI. p. 229.

The Order and Manner of creating Knights of the Bath in the Time of Peace, according to the Custom of England.

1. WHEN an esquire comes to court, to receive the order of knighthood, in the time of peace, according to the custom of England, he shall be honorably received by the officers of the court; Sc. the steward or the chamberlain, if they be present, but otherwise by the marshals and ushers. Then there shall be provided two esquires of honor, grave, and well seen in courtship and nurture, as also in the feats of chivalry; and they shall be esquires, and governors in all things relating to him, which shall take the order aforesaid.

2. And if the esquire do come before dinner, he shall carry up one dish of the first course to the king's table.

† This narrative is a translation of an old tract in French, which was first published by Edward Bylhe, Esq; in his learned notes to Upton de Studio Militari, p. 21—24. Sir William Dugdale took the trouble to turn it into English, in his antiquities of Warwickshire, vol. 2. p. 708—710. Both in Bylhe and in Dugdale this narrative is illustrated by figures, delineated from a book in which they were drawn in colors, in the time of Edward IV. Père Daniel holds it as expressive of the ceremonies used in France; and, it is to be thought, that they were universal over Europe. The original French, of which the naïveté of the style has been observed, is to be found both in Upton and P. Daniel. Of the ceremonies, the fantasticalness and levity are not more remarkable, than the important seriousness with which they were performed.
duct the esquire, that is to receive the order, into his chamber, without any more being seen that day.

4. And in the evening the esquire's governors shall send for the barber, and they shall make ready a

3. And after this the esquire's governors shall con-bath, handsomely hung with linen, both within and without the vessel, taking care that it be covered with tapistry and blankets, in respect of the coldness of the night. And then shall the esquire be shaven, and his hair cut round. After which the esquire's governors shall go to the king, and say, Sir, it is now in the evening, and the esquire is fitted for the bath when you please: Whereupon the king shall command his chamberlain that he shall take along with him unto the esquire's chamber, the most gentle and grave knights that are present, to inform, counsel, and instruct him touching the order, and feats of chivalry: And, in like manner, that the other esquires of the household, with the minstrels, shall proceed before the knights, singing, dancing, and sporting, even to the chamber-door of the said esquire.

5. And when the esquire's governors shall hear the noise of the minstrels, they shall undress the said esquire, and put him naked into the bath: But, at the entrance into the chamber, the esquire's governors shall cause the music to cease, and the esquires also for a while. And this being done, the grave knights shall enter into the chamber without making any noise, and, doing reverence to each other, shall consider which of themselves it shall be that is to instruct the esquire in the order and course of the bath. And when they are agreed, then shall the chief of them go to the bath, and, kneeling down before it, say, with a soft voice:
Sir! be this bath of great honor to you; and then he shall declare unto him the seats of the order, as far as he can, putting part of the water of the bath upon the shoulder of the esquire; and having so done, take his leave. And the esquire's governors shall attend at the sides of the bath, and so likewise the other knights, the one after the other, till all be done.

6. Then shall these knights go out of the chamber for a while; and the esquire's governors shall take the esquire out of the bath, and help him to his bed, there to continue till his body be dry; which bed shall be plain and without curtains. And as soon as he is dry, they shall help him out of bed, they shall clothe him very warm, in respect of the cold of the night; and over his inner garments shall put on a robe of russet, with long sleeves, having a hood thereto, like unto that of an hermit. And the esquire being out of the bath, the barber shall take away the bath, with whatsoever appertaineth thereto, both within and without, for his fee; and likewise for the collar (about his neck) be he earl, baron, banneret, or bachelor, according to the custom of the court.

7. And then shall the esquire's governors open the door of the chamber, and shall cause the ancient and grave knights to enter, to conduct the esquire to the chapel: And when they are come in, the esquires, sporting and dancing, shall go before the esquire, with the minstrels, making melody to the chapel.

8. And being entered the chapel, there shall be wine and spices ready to give to the knights and esquires. And then the esquire's governors shall bring the said knights before the esquire to take their leave of him; and he shall give them thanks all together, for the
pains, favor, and courtely which they have done him; and this being performed, they shall depart out of the chapel.

9. Then shall the esquire’s governors shut the door of the chapel, none staying therein except themselves, the priest, the chandler, and the watch. And, in this manner shall the esquire stay in the chapel all night, till it be day, bestowing himself in orisons and prayers, beseeching Almighty God, and his blessed mother, that, of their good grace, they will give him ability to receive this high temporal dignity, to the honor, praise, and service of them; as also of holy church, and the order of knighthood. And at day-break, one shall call the priest to confess him of all his sins, and, having heard matins and masses, shall afterwards be commended, if he please.

10. And after his entrance into the chapel, there shall be a taper burning before him; and so soon as mass is begun, one of the governors shall hold the taper until the reading of the gospel; and then shall the governor deliver it into his hands, who shall hold it himself, till the gospel be ended; but then shall receive it again from him, and set it before him, there to stand during the whole time of mass.

11. And at the elevation of the hoft, one of the governors shall take the hood from the esquire, and afterwards deliver it to him again, until the gospel in principio; and at the beginning thereof the governor shall take the same hood again, and cause it to be carried away, and shall give him the taper again into his own hands.

12. And then, having a penny, or more, in readiness, near to the candlestick, at the words verbum caro factum
the esquire, kneeling, shall offer the taper and the penny; that is to say, the taper to the honor of God, and the penny to the honor of the person that makes him a knight. All which being performed, the esquire's governors shall conduct the esquire to his chamber, and shall lay him again in bed till it be full day-light. And when he shall be thus in bed, till the time of his rising, he shall be clothed with a covering of gold, called Singleton, and this shall be lined with blue Cardene. And when the governors shall see it fit time, they shall go to the king, and say to him; Sir, when doth it please you that our master shall rise? Whereupon the king shall command the grave knights, esquires, and minstrels, to go to the chamber of the said esquire for to raise him, and to attire and dress him, and to bring him before him into the hall. But, before their entrance, and the noise of the minstrels heard, the esquire's governors shall provide all necessaries ready for the order, to deliver to the knights, for to attire and dress the esquire.

And when the knights are come to the esquire's chamber, they shall enter with leave, and say to him; Sir, Good-morrow to you, it is time to get up and make yourself ready; and thereupon they shall take him by the arm to be dressed, the most ancient of the said knights reaching him his shirt, another giving him his breeches, the third his doublet; and another putting upon him a kirtle of red Tartarin, two other shall raise him from the bed, and two other put on his nether stockings, with soles of leather laced to them; two other shall lace his sleeves, and another shall gird him with a girdle of white leather, without any buckles thereon; another shall comb his head; another shall
put on his coif; another shall give him his mantle of silk (over the basse or kirtle of red Tartarin) tied with a lace of white silk, with a pair of white gloves hanging at the end of the lace. And the chandler shall take for his fees all the garments, with the whole array and necessaries wherewith the esquire shall be apparelled and clothed on the day that he comes into the court to receive the order; as also the bed wherein he first lay after his bathing, together with the singleton and other necessaries; in consideration of which fees, the same chandler shall find, at his proper cost, the said coif, the gloves, the girdle, and the lace.

13. And when all this is done, the grave knights shall get on horseback, and conduct the esquire to the hall, the minstrels going before making music: But the horse must be accoutred as followeth: The saddle having a cover of black leather, the bow of the saddle being of white wood quartered. The stirrup-leathers black, the stirrups gilt; the paitrell of black leather gilt, with a cross pate gilt, hanging before the breast of the horse, but without any crooper: The bridle black, with long notched rains, after the Spanish fashion, and a cross pate on the front. And there must be provided a young esquire, courteous, who shall ride before the esquire, bareheaded, and carry the esquire’s sword, with the spurs hanging at the handle of the sword; and the scabbard of the sword shall be of white leather, and the girdle of white leather, without buckles. And the youth shall hold the sword by the point, and after this manner must they ride to the king’s hall, the governors being ready at hand.

14. And the grave knights shall conduct the said esquire; and so soon as they come before the hall-door, the
the marshals and ushers are to be ready to meet him, and desire him to alight; and being alighted, the marshal shall take the horse for his fee, or else c s. Then shall the knights conduct him into the hall, up to the high table, and afterwards up to the end of the second table, until the king's coming, the knights standing on each side of him, and the youth holding the sword upright before him, between the two governors.

15. And when the king is come into the hall, and beholdeth the esquire ready to receive this high order and temporal dignity, he shall ask for the sword and spurs, which the chamberlain shall take from the youth, and shew to the king; and thereupon the king, taking the right spur, shall deliver it to the most noble and genteel person there, and shall say to him, *Put this upon the esquire's heel;* and he kneeling on one knee, must take the esquire by the right leg, and, putting his foot on his own knee, is to fasten the spur upon the right heel of the esquire; and then making a cross upon the esquire's knee, shall kiss him; which being done, another knight must come and put on his left spur in the like manner. And then shall the king, of his great favor, take the sword and gird the esquire therewith; whereupon the esquire is to lift up his arms, holding his hands together, and the gloves betwixt his thumbs and fingers.

16. And the king, putting his own arms about the esquire's neck, shall say, *Be thou a good knight,* and afterwards kisses him. Then are the ancient knights to conduct this new knight to the chapel, with much music, even to the high altar, and there he shall kneel, and, putting his right hand upon the altar, is to promise to maintain the rights of the holy church, during his whole life.
17. And then he shall ungirt himself of his sword, and, with great devotion to God and holy church, offer it there; praying unto God and all his saints, that he may keep that order, which he hath so taken, even to the end: All which being accomplished, he is to take a draught of wine.

18. And, at his going out of the chapel, the king's master-cook being ready to take off his spurs, for his own fee, shall say, *I the king's master-cook am come to receive your spurs for my fee; and if you do any thing contrary to the order of knighthood, (which God forbid) I shall hack your spurs from your heels.*

19. After this the knights must conduct him again into the hall, where he shall sit the first at the knight's table, and the knights about him, himself to be served as the others are; but he must neither cut nor drink at the table, nor spit, nor look about him, upwards or downwards, more than a bride. And this being done, one of his governors having a handkerchief in his hand, shall hold it before his face when he is to spit. And when the king is risen from the table, and gone into his chamber, then shall the new knight be conducted, with great fete of knights, and minstrels proceeding before him, into his own chamber; and at his entrance, the knights and minstrels shall take leave of him, and go to dinner.

20. And the knights being thus gone, the chamber-door shall be fastened, and the new knight disrobed of his attire, which is to be given to the kings of arms, in case they be there present; and if not, then to the other heralds, if they be there; otherwise, to the minstrels, together with a mark of silver, if he be a knight bachelor; if a baron, double to that; if an earl, or of a superior
rank, double thereto. And the ruffet night-cap must be given to the watch, or else a noble.

Then is he to be clothed again with a blue robe, the sleeves whereof to be fireight, shaped after the fashion of a priest's; and upon his left shoulder to have a lace of white silk hanging: And he shall wear that lace upon all his garments, from that day forwards, until he have gained some honor and renown by arms, and is register'd of as high record as the nobles, knights, esquires, and heralds of arms; and be renowned for some feats of arms as aforesaid; or that some great prince, or most noble lady, can cut that lace from his shoulder, saying, Sir! we have heard so much of the true renown concerning your honors, which you have done in divers parts, to the great fame of Chivalry, as to yourself, and of him that made you a knight, that it is meet this lace be taken from you.

21. After dinner, the knights of honor and gentlemen, must come to the knight, and conduct him into the presence of the king, the esquire's governors going before him, where he is to say, Right noble and renowned Sir! I do in all that I can give you thanks for these honors, curtesies, and bounty, which you have vouchsafed to me. And having so said, shall take his leave of the king.

22. Then are the esquire's governors to take leave of this their master, saying, Sir! we have, according to the king's command, and as we were obliged, done what we can; but if through negligence we have in aught displeased you, or by any thing we have done amiss at this time, we desire pardon of you for it. And, on the other side, Sir, as right is, according to the customs of the court, and ancient kingdoms, we do require our robes and fees, as the king's esquires, companions to bachelors and other lords. 

THE END.
Bolingbroke's Letters on the Study of History, 1 vol.
Gibbon's History of the Roman Empire, 14 vol.
Robertson's History of the Emperor Charles Vth., 4 vol.
Blair's Lectures on Rhetoric and belles lettres, 3 vol.
Kippis's Life of Captain James Cook, 2 vol.
Hume's History of England, 12 vol.
Gillie's History of Ancient Greece, 5 vol.
Robertson's History of America, 3 vol.
Middleton's Life of Cicero, 4 vol.
Shaftesbury's Characteristics, 3 vol.
Fergunson's Essay on the History of Civil Society, 1 vol.
Kears's Account of the Pelew-Islands, 1 vol.
Smith's Wealth of Nations, 4 vol.
Fergunson's History of the Roman Republic, 6 vol.
Robertson's History of Scotland, 3 vol.
- - - - Disquisition concerning India, 1 vol.
Delolme's Constitution of England, 1 vol.
Watson's History of Philip IIth., 3 vol.
- - - History of Philip IIIrd., 2 vol.
Burke's Inquiry into the Sublime, 1 vol.
Berrington's History of Abelard and Heloise, 2 vol.
- - - History of Henry IIId. of England, 3 vol.
Hume's Essays and Treatises, 4 vol.
Smith's Theory of Moral Sentiments, 2 vol.
Junius's Lettres, 1 vol.
Smollet's Continuation of Hume's History of England, 8 vol.
Montague's Ancient Republics, 1 vol.
Millar's Distinction of Ranks, 1 vol.
Home's Sketches of Man, 4 vol.
- - - Elements of Criticism, 3 vol.
Lowth's English Grammar, 1 vol. In the price of half a vol.
Blackwell's Memoirs of the Court of Augustus, 7 vol.
Theory of agreeable Sentiments, 1 vol.
History of Mills Clarissa Harlowe, by Richardson, 8 vol.
History of Tom Jones, by Fielding, 4 vol.
The Life and Opinions of Tristram Shandy, 2 vol.
Yorick's Sentimental Journey through France and Italy, 1 vol.
Anderson's Narrative of the British Embassy to and from China in the years 1792, 1793, and 1794; with a description of the country; the customs, manners; &c., 1 vol.
Stewart's Political Economy, 5 vol.
Gibbon's miscellaneous Works, with his Life written by himself, 7 vol.
Gaët's History of Greece, from the accession of Alexander till its final Subjection to the Roman Power, 2 vol.
Stuart's View of Society in Europe, in its progress from Rudeness to Refinement, 12 vol.